

Sentence

A group of words which makes a complete meaningful sense is called a sentence.

Types of SENTENCES

1. Assertive Sentence

(a) Assertive Sentence: -

The sentence which declares or asserts a statement, feeling, opinion, incident, event, history, or anything is called an assertive sentence.

Example-

1. Sita writes a letter.

2. Ram is very good Basketball player.

(b) Negative Sentence: -

A negative sentence or phrase is one that contains a word such as "not", "no", "never", or "nothing":

Example-

1.

Ram doesn't eat mango.

2.

This is not an umbrella.

2. Interrogative Sentence

An interrogative sentence is a sentence that asks a question and always ends with a question mark.

Example-

1. What is your name?

2. Who is that boy?

3. Imperative Sentence

An imperative sentence is a sentence that expresses a direct command, request, invitations, warning, or instruction.

Example-

1. Pass the pepper.

2. Do not cross the road.

4. Exclamatory Sentence

An exclamatory sentence makes a statement that conveys strong emotion or excitement.

Example-

1. Fantastic, let's go!

2. Wow, I really love you!

Types of Sentences on the basis of Structure

As we know that there are 4-types of sentences on the basis of structure, these are also known as sentence structures, and they are:

A. Simple sentences

A simple sentence is the sentence having a single independent clause that contains a subject that can describe a person or thing by which an action is performed and along with the subject it also contains a predicate that is a verb or verb phrase that describes the action of the subject. A simple sentence can also contain more than one verb.

For Example,

He bought a new pencil.

Aman is writing a letter.

Kamal is writing a letter and listening to music.

B. Compound sentences

Compound sentences are made up of two or more independent clauses that are joined by a coordinating conjunction or sometimes by either a linking word or semicolon (;). The coordinating conjunction are but, yet, nor, or, and, for etc. Two independent clauses can also be joined by some conjunctive adverb like therefore, likewise, rather, etc. Look at few examples,

1. Aman is writing a letter but forgot to post.

2. He bought a new car yet he is coming to the office by bus.

3. He bought a new car; he is coming to the office by bus.

C. Complex sentences

Complex sentences are made up of one independent clause and one or more dependent clauses. In a sentence, these clauses are joined or linked with one another by subordinating conjunctions like when, after, because etc. and by relative pronouns like who, which, that, etc.

A simple comma will connect the clauses when the dependent clause appears first in the sentence. For example,

1. After he bought a new car, the boy went on a long drive.
2. The boy went on a long drive because he bought a new car.

Exercise

1. 'What is your name?' – this is an example of which type of sentence?
(a) exclamatory (b) imperative
(c) interrogative (d) assertive
2. How many kinds of sentences are there in English grammar according to the structure or function?
(a) eight (b) seven
(c) six (d) five
3. 'I wish I had a car.' This is an example of –
(a) optative sentence (b) interrogative sentence
(c) assertive sentence (d) exclamatory sentence
4. 'Do your work as fast as you can.' This is an example of –
(a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
(c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
5. Which type of sentence shows a sudden or strong feeling?
(a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
(c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
6. Which type of sentence is used to give an order, an advice or a request?
(a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
(c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
7. Which type of sentence is used to ask something?
(a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
(c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
8. Which type of sentence ends with a question mark?
(a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
(c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
9. 'Cook some food for me.' What type of sentence is this?
(a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
(c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
10. What type of sentence ends with an exclamatory sign?
(a) exclamatory (b) imperative
(c) interrogative (d) assertive
11. Assertive or declarative sentences are of –
(a) two types (b) three types
(c) four types (d) five types
12. Which of the following is an example of a negative sentence –
(a) Rohit likes mango. (b) The cat is drinking milk.
(c) The boy is not clever. (d) None of the above.
13. 'Do You know where my cap is?' This is an example of which kind of sentence? –
(a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
(c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence

14. 'Do your homework as soon as possible.' This is an example of which type of sentence? –
 (a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
 (c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
15. 'Coffee is my favourite drink.' This is an example of which type of sentence? –
 (a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
 (c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
16. 'Catch it.' This is an example of which kind of sentence? –
 (a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
 (c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
17. 'What kind of music do you like?' This is an example of which type of sentence? –
 (a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
 (c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
18. 'Wow! You are looking fantastic.' This is an example of which type of sentence? –
 (a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
 (c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
19. 'Why are you so scared of me?' This is an example of which type of sentence? –
 (a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
 (c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
20. 'Respect your elders.' This is an example of which type of sentence? –
 (a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
 (c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
21. 'Alas! Our beloved teacher has got an accident.' This is an example of which type of sentence? –
 (a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
 (c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
22. 'Whom did you see yesterday?' This is an example of which type of sentence? –
 (a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
 (c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
23. 'Please grant me a loan.' This is an example of which type of sentence? –
 (a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
 (c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
24. 'Don't run in the sun.' This is an example of which kind of sentence? –
 (a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
 (c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
25. 'Oh! What a wonderful dream.' This is an example of which kind of sentence? –
 (a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
 (c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
26. 'Who has broken the glass?' This is an example of which type of sentence? –
 (a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
 (c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
27. 'Please invite him for lunch.' This is an example of which type of sentence? –
 (a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
 (c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
28. 'The sun shines in the sky.' This is an example of which kind of sentence? –
 (a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
 (c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence

29. 'Give me that mirror.' This is an example of which type of sentence? –
 (a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
 (c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
30. 'Drive slowly.' This is an example of which kind of sentence? –
 (a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
 (c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
31. From the following four options choose the correct interrogative sentence. –
 (a) Will he win the race? (b) Will he won the race?
 (c) Shall he winning the race? (d) Will he has win the race?
32. Which one of the following options is an example of imperative sentence? –
 (a) You work hard until you become rich.
 (b) You are working hard until you become rich.
 (c) You have been working hard until you become rich.
 (d) Work hard until you become rich.
33. Which one of the following options is an example of exclamatory sentence? –
 (a) I forgot my wallet. (b) I have forgotten my wallet.
 (c) Oh no! I forgot my wallet. (d) I am forgetting my wallet.
34. Which one is correct? –
 (a) Do not touch it. (b) Did not touched it.
 (c) Do not touched it. (d) None of the above.
35. Which one of the following options is correct? –
 (a) Do you likes tea? (b) Did you liked tea?
 (c) Did you like tea (d) Do you like tea?
36. Choose the correct interrogative sentence. –
 (a) Why did he behave like this?
 (b) Why does he behaves like this?
 (c) Why did he behaved like this
 (d) Why do he behaved like this?
37. Which sentence is correct? –
 (a) Why was you so late yesterday?
 (b) Why were you so late yesterday?
 (c) Why are you so late yesterday?
 (d) Why have you so late yesterday?
38. 'Wish you a happy journey.' This is an example of which kind of sentence? –
 (a) optative sentence (b) interrogative sentence
 (c) assertive sentence (d) exclamatory sentence
39. 'Leave the bag on the table.' This is an example of which type of sentence? –
 (a) exclamatory sentence (b) imperative sentence
 (c) interrogative sentence (d) assertive sentence
40. 'May you live long.' This is an example of which type of sentence? –
 (a) optative sentence (b) interrogative sentence
 (c) assertive sentence (d) exclamatory sentence
41. 'Please turn the lights off.' This is an example of which type of sentence? –
 (a) exclamatory sentence
 (b) imperative sentence
 (c) interrogative sentence
 (d) assertive sentence

42. 'May your team win the match.' This is an example of which type of sentence? -
 (a) optative sentence (b) interrogative sentence
 (c) assertive sentence (d) exclamatory sentence
43. Which type of sentence begins with the subject mostly? -
 (a) imperative sentence (b) interrogative sentence
 (c) assertive sentence (d) exclamatory sentence
44. Which one is the example of an exclamatory sentence? -
 (a) He is cute. (b) Is he cute?
 (c) How cute he is! (d) None of the above.
45. Assertive sentence can also be called -
 (a) imperative sentence (b) interrogative sentence
 (c) declarative sentence (d) exclamatory sentence
46. 'The lion killed the deer.' This is an example of which type of sentence? -
 (a) imperative sentence (b) interrogative sentence
 (c) assertive sentence (d) exclamatory sentence
47. 'Wow! I am glad to hear that news.' This is an example of which type of sentence? -
 (a) imperative sentence (b) interrogative sentence
 (c) assertive sentence (d) exclamatory sentence
48. 'Pay my fees by time.' This is an example of which type of sentence? -
 (a) imperative sentence (b) interrogative sentence
 (c) assertive sentence (d) exclamatory sentence
49. Which one is correct? -
 (a) Is he known to you? (b) Are he known to you?
 (c) Is he know you? (d) Is he knew to you?
50. Which one is correct? -
 (a) Please lend me some money. (b) Lend me please some money.
 (c) Please lends me some money. (d) Please lent me some money.
51. Convert the affirmative sentence into a negative sentence:
 Mili is prettier than Neha.
 (a) Neha is not as pretty as Mili. (b) Mili is not as pretty as Neha.
 (c) Neha is not as prettier as Mili. (d) Mili is not prettier than Neha.
52. Convert the following interrogative sentence to an assertive sentence:
 Who would not love his country?
 (a) No one loves his country. (b) Everyone loves his country.
 (c) Someone loves his country. (d) Everyone loves the country.
53. Convert the following simple sentence to a compound sentence:
 Besides being rude, he was also arrogant.
 (a) He was rude and arrogant.
 (b) He was not only rude but also arrogant.
 (c) He was not only arrogant but also rude.
 (d) He was being rude and arrogant.
54. Convert the affirmative sentence into a exclamatory sentence:
 She dances very well.
 (a) how well she dances.
 (b) How well she dances
 (c) What a great dance!
 (d) How well she dances!

55. Convert the affirmative sentence into an exclamatory sentence
I wish I had wings of a dove.
(a) O that I had wings of a dove!
(b) I am desirous of having wings of a dove!
(c) What if I had wings of a dove!
(d) How can one have wings of a dove!
56. Convert the affirmative sentence into an exclamatory sentence
I wish I knew more people.
(a) If I could know more people!
(b) If I would be able to know more people!
(c) I wish to know more people!
(d) If only I knew more people!
57. Convert the following exclamatory sentence to an assertive sentence:
Hurrah! We have won the match.
(a) Hurrah, we have won the match. (b) We won the match.
(c) We rejoice to have won the match. (d) We have won the match, hurrah.
58. Convert the following compound sentence into a simple sentence :
We must eat, or we cannot live.
(a) We must live to eat. (b) We must eat to live.
(c) We can't live if we eat. (d) We can't eat if we live.
59. Convert the following complex sentence to a compound sentence:
She is sure that he is wrong.
(a) He is wrong, and of this she is sure.
(b) Of this she is sure that he is wrong.
(c) He is wrong, she is sure.
(d) She is sure, he is wrong.
60. Convert the following complex sentence into a simple sentence:
It is sad that she died so young.
(a) Her death at so early an age is sad.
(b) She dying so young is sad.
(c) It is sad to know that she died at an early age.
(d) She dying at an early age is sad

Solutions

1.	c	2.	d	3.	a	4.	b	5.	a	6.	b	7.	c	8.	c	9.	b	10.	a
11.	b	12.	c	13.	c	14.	b	15.	d	16.	b	17.	c	18.	a	19.	c	20.	b
21.	a	22.	c	23.	b	24.	b	25.	a	26.	c	27.	b	28.	d	29.	b	30.	b
31.	a	32.	d	33.	c	34.	a	35.	d	36.	a	37.	b	38.	a	39.	b	40.	a
41.	b	42.	a	43.	c	44.	c	45.	c	46.	c	47.	d	48.	a	49.	a	50.	a
51.	a	52.	b	53.	b	54.	d	55.	a	56.	d	57.	c	58.	b	59.	a	60.	a

Solutions

1.	c	2.	d	3.	a	4.	b	5.	a	6.	b	7.	c	8.	c	9.	b	10.	a
11.	b	12.	c	13.	c	14.	b	15.	d	16.	b	17.	c	18.	a	19.	c	20.	b
21.	a	22.	c	23.	b	24.	b	25.	a	26.	c	27.	b	28.	d	29.	b	30.	b
31.	a	32.	d	33.	c	34.	a	35.	d	36.	a	37.	b	38.	a	39.	b	40.	a
41.	b	42.	a	43.	c	44.	c	45.	c	46.	c	47.	d	48.	a	49.	a	50.	a
51.	a	52.	b	53.	b	54.	d	55.	a	56.	d	57.	c	58.	b	59.	a	60.	a

Clause

Definition: A clause consists of a subject and a verb and is the smallest grammatical unit that expresses a thought.

What is a Clause in a Sentence?

In its simplest form, a clause in grammar is a subject plus a verb. The subject is the entity "doing" the action of the sentence and the verb is the action that subject completes. A clause creates a complete thought (an idea or a statement that can stand alone).

A complete thought is also called a main clause or independent clause (IC).

What is an Independent Clause?

Independent clause definition: An independent clause can stand alone in a sentence. It contains a subject and a verb in its smallest form. A clause may also include modifiers and a verb predicate. It is a complete thought and the smallest unit of grammar that is syntactically accurate.

Example of Independent Clauses:

What is a Dependent Clauses?

Dependent clause definition: Dependent clauses contain a subject and verb. However, they cannot stand alone as an independent thought. They must be joined with an independent clause to be grammatically correct.

Example of Dependent Clause:

Every night before I go to bed, I eat cookies.

This example contains the IC, "I eat bananas." However, a dependent clause now opens the sentence. While the dependent clause contains a subject and a verb ("I go"), the dependent clause itself cannot stand alone as a complete thought.

Example of Dependent Clause:

Every night before I go to bed.....

This is not a complete thought and therefore not a sentence in English.

Every night before I go to bed...what happens? This idea must be joined with an independent clause to be grammatically correct.

What is a Noun Clause?

Noun clause definition: A noun clause is a type of dependent clause that acts as a noun in the sentence. A noun clause will always contain a subject and a verb. However, it cannot stand alone as a complete thought.

Example of Noun Clause:

I remember what you said yesterday.

Here, the underlined portion is the independent clause that can stand alone. The italicized words, "what you said yesterday," serve as a dependent noun clause. The noun clause is acting as the object of the sentence. In the noun clause

"you said" is a subject plus a verb. This creates the clause (a subject plus a verb). However, "what you said yesterday" cannot stand alone and therefore must be paired with an independent clause.

Additional noun clause examples:

I thought what she wore was so chic.

Whoever you confide in is a person you can trust.

What is an Adjective Clause? (Also called Relative Clause)

Adjective clause definition: An adjective clause is a type of dependent clause that acts as an adjective in the sentence. An adjective clause will always contain a subject and a verb. However, it cannot stand alone as a complete thought.

An adjective clause will always begin with one of the following words:

Relative Pronouns List:

That

where

who

whom

which

Relative Adverbs List:

When

where

why

Example of Adjective Clause:

The man whom you saw at the store committed a robbery.

The adjective clause is acting as an adjective in this sentence. The adjective clause describes the boy. It contains a subject and a verb,

"you saw." However, it cannot stand alone as a complete thought

"Who you saw at the robbery" is not a complete statement.

Additional adjective clause examples:

1. The store that the boy robbed is on the corner.
2. The corner of the street where my family lives is surrounded by investigators.

What is an Adverbial Clause?

Adverbial clause definition: An adverbial clause is a type of dependent clause that acts as an adverb in the sentence. An adverbial clause will always contain a subject and a verb. However, it cannot stand alone as a complete thought.

Example of Adverbial Clause:

You will continue driving north until you see a stop sign.

The adverbial clause is acting as an adverb in this sentence. The adverbial clause modifies how you will drive. The adverbial clause contains a subject and verb, "you will continue." However, it cannot stand alone as a complete thought. "Until you see a stop sign" is not a complete statement.

Additional adverbial clause examples:

1. After the movie ended, we ate ice cream.
2. Beth visits her grandfather whenever she is in town.

What is a Gerund Phrase?

A gerund phrase is created when a gerund – a verb that takes an -ing form and functions as a noun – has a modifier, object or both. That sounds quite technical, so let's break it down for a simple explanation of a gerund phrase:

First, here is an example of a gerund phrase in a sentence

Eating a slice of pie quickly is a recipe for disaster.

So, we can breakdown the gerund phrase like so:

The gerund in the sentence is eating. (Remember, a gerund is a noun that is formed by adding the -ing suffix to a verb.) The Gerund phrase object in the sentence (the thing being acted upon, in this case by eating) is a slice of pie. The modifier in the sentence is quickly.

A gerund phrase will follow these rules, which can help you identify a gerund phrase in a sentence:

- The phrase will always start with a gerund.
- The gerund phrase will either have a modifier, an object or both.
- The entire phrase will function as a noun.
- The phrase will have singular agreement with a verb.

Look at these examples with the gerund phrases used in different ways:

1. Reading books quietly is my favorite pastime.
2. My favorite pastime is reading books quietly
3. I recommend reading books quietly to pass the time.

Exercise

Direction (1-30) Choose the right kind of clauses from the following.

1. My friend helped me when I was in danger.
(a) Adjective clause
(c) Noun clause
(b) Adverb clause
(d) None of the above
2. We believe in democracy though it has its shortcomings.
(a) Adjective clause
(c) Noun clause
(b) Adverb clause
(d) None of the above
3. My parents were happy because I won the first prize.
(a) Adjective clause
(c) Noun clause
(b) Adverb clause
(d) None of the above
4. This is the girl who talked to me yesterday.
(a) Adjective clause
(c) Noun clause
(b) Adverb clause
(d) None of the above
5. I have lost the tickets which I bought.
(a) Adjective clause
(c) Noun clause
(b) Adverb clause
(d) None of the above
6. He could not answer any of the questions that I asked him.
(a) Adjective clause
(c) Noun clause
(b) Adverb clause
(d) None of the above
7. Although he is very rich, he is a miser.
(a) Adjective clause
(c) Noun clause
(b) Adverb clause
(d) None of the above
8. Everybody admits that he is a brave man.
(a) Adjective clause
(c) Noun clause
(b) Adverb clause
(d) No Improvement
9. We knew that he was guilty.
(a) Adjective clause
(c) Noun clause
(b) Adverb clause
(d) None of the above

10. What he told me was a lie.
(a) Adjective clause
(c) Noun clause
(b) Adverb clause
(d) None of the above
11. He gave me everything that I asked for.
(a) Adjective clause
(c) Noun clause
(b) Adverb clause
(d) None of the above
12. Your statement that you lost the money cannot be believed.
(a) Adjective clause
(c) Noun clause
(b) Adverb clause
(d) None of the above
13. They told us why they are doing that.
(a) Noun clause
(c) Adverb clause
(b) Adjective clause
(d) wh-clause
14. They left early.
(a) Noun clause
(c) Adjective clause
(b) Declarative clause
(d) Adverb clause
15. The time when they left early
(a) Noun clause
(c) Adjective clause
(b) Relative clause
(d) Adverb clause
16. The claim that he expressed
(a) Adjunct clause (relative clause)
(c) Adjective clause
(b) Relative clause
(d) Adverb clause
17. We like the music that you brought.
(a) Adjunct clause (relative clause)
(c) Adjective clause
(b) Relative clause
(d) Adverb clause
18. That was when they laughed
(a) Adjunct clause (relative clause)
(c) Adjective clause
(b) Relative clause
(d) Predicative SV-clause
19. Bill stopping the project was a big disappointment.
(a) Adjunct clause (relative clause)
(c) Adjective clause
(b) Relative clause
(d) Non-finite gerund clause
20. I asked him when he would go there.
(a) Noun clause
(c) Relative clause
(b) Adjunct clause (relative clause)
(d) Adjective clause
21. I shall not tell you where he lives.
(a) Adjunct clause (relative clause)
(c) Relative clause
(b) Noun clause
(d) Adjective clause
22. I do not know if he will come.
(a) Adverb clause
(c) Noun clause
(b) Adjunct clause (relative clause)
(d) Relative clause
23. I do not know who came here last night.
(a) Adverb clause
(c) Noun clause
(b) Adjunct clause (relative clause)
(d) Relative clause
24. I cannot say whose book is this?
(a) Adverb clause
(c) Noun clause
(b) Adjunct clause (relative clause)
(d) Relative clause
25. Do you know which house is this?
(a) Adverb clause
(c) Noun clause
(b) Adjunct clause (relative clause)
(d) Relative clause

26. I know that he will come.
(a) Noun clause
(c) Adjunct clause (relative clause)
27. We come here that we may study.
(a) Noun clause
(c) Adjunct clause (relative clause)
28. He is so weak that he cannot run.
(a) Noun clause
(c) Relative clause
29. He is such a weak boy that he cannot run.
(a) Noun clause
(c) Relative clause
30. He is such a boy as does not help anybody.
(a) Adjective clause
(c) Relative clause

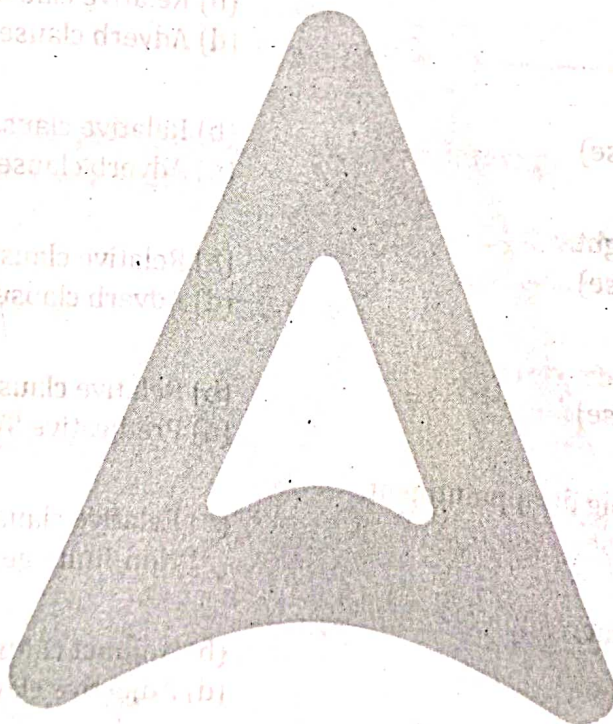
- (b) Adverb clause
(d) Relative clause

- (b) Adverb clause
(d) Relative clause

- (b) Adjunct clause (relative clause)
(d) Adverb clause

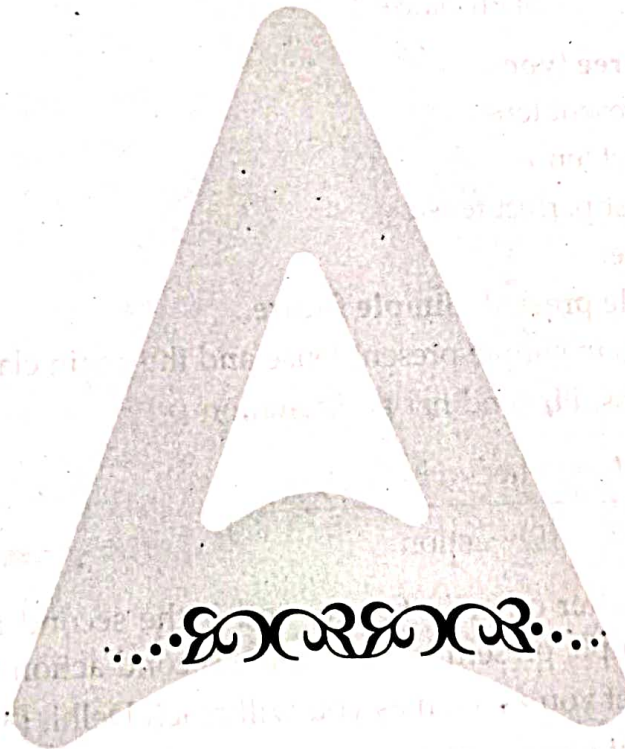
- (b) Adjunct clause (relative clause)
(d) Adverb clause

- (b) Adjunct clause (relative clause)
(d) Adverb clause



Solutions

1.	b	2.	b	3.	b	4.	a	5.	a	6.	a	7.	b	8.	c	9.	c	10.	c
11.	a	12.	c	13.	d	14.	b	15.	b	16.	a	17.	a	18.	d	19.	d	20.	a
21.	b	22.	c	23.	c	24.	c	25.	c	26.	a	27.	b	28.	d	29.	d	30.	a



Conditional Sentences

Conditional sentences are also known as conditional clauses or 'if clauses'. They are used to denote that 'the action in the main clause (without if) can only take place if a certain condition (in the clause with if) is fulfilled'.

Ex - You will succeed provided you work hard.

The following words are used to introduce the condition of a sentence:

- | | | | |
|------------|---------------|------------------|---------------------|
| (i) If | (ii) Provided | (iii) As soon as | (iv) No sooner than |
| (v) Unless | (vi) Until | (vii) When | |

Conditional sentences have two parts:

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| (i) If clause | (ii) Main clause |
|---------------|------------------|

Ex - If I have enough money, I will go to Japan
 If clause Main clause

Conditional sentences is of three types:

1. When 'if clause' is in present tense
2. When 'if clause' is in part tense
3. When 'if clause' is in past perfect tense

1. 'If clause' is in present tense:

General formula: If + Simple present, Simple future.

In such sentence, 'If clause' is in simple present tense and the 'main clause' in simple future tense.

Ex - If I will find her address, I'll send her an invitation (×)

If I find her address, I'll send her an invitation (✓)
 1st action 2nd action

If two action take place one after other in future, and if the second action depends on the first action, the first action is in simple present tense and the second action is in simple future tense

Ex - (1) She will come to meet you as soon as you will reach Delhi. (×)

She will come to meet you as soon as you reach Delhi. (✓)

(2) If the government will become strict, corruption will surely finish. (×)

If the government becomes strict, corruption will surely finish. (✓)

(3) If will help him provided he will mends his ways. (×)

I will help provided he mends his ways. (✓)

(4) Unless he will not take care of his health, he will not recover. (×)

Unless he takes care of his health, he will not recover. (✓)

In the above sentences, 'will/shall/would' will not come with the part that consists if, as soon as, provided, before, after, until unless in case, when and lest.

'Not is not used with 'until/unless'

In conditional sentences, 'will/shall not be used with 'when'.

Ex - There will be rush at the platform when the train will arrive (×)

There will be rush at the platform when the train arrives (✓)

2. If 'if clause' is in past tense:

General Formula: If + simple past, subject + would + V₁

Ex - If I had money, would lend it you.

3. If 'if clause' is in past perfect tense.

General formula: If + part perfect, sub + would + have V₃

Ex - If I had seen you, I could have stopped my car.

In such sentences, we can also replace 'If' with 'had' this will not change the meaning of the sentence.

Had + Subject + V₃ + Obj, Subject + Would + have + V₃

Ex - Had I seen you, I would have stopped my car

Three important formula:

⇒ If + Present Indefinite, simple future

⇒ If + S + V₂, S + would + V₁

⇒ If + S + had + V₃, S + would + have + V₃

Other types of conditional sentences:

- (1) Sentences related to imaginary position.

General formula : If + subject + were, subject + would + V₁

Ex - If I were a bird, I would fly in the sky.

- (2) For imaginary sentences, 'were' is used with all subjects.

If, as though, in case, as if, would that and I wish.

Ex - He scolded me as if he was my father. (×)

He scolded me as if he were my father. (✓)

If clause, can also take unless, so long, as soon as, when, provided, in case, but for etc.

Ex - Unless, you work hard, you will not pass.

Exercise

Direction: Find out the error in each of the following sentences, if there is no error, answer is (e).

Avoid punctuation mistakes (if any).

1. (a) If she will work/ (b) hard she/(c) will surely / (d) clear the exam. / (e) No error
2. (a) Before the teacher / (b) will come you / (c) should better / (d) complete your test. / (e) No error
3. (a) We will come to/ (b) know the winner / (c) after the / (d) result is declared. / (e) No error
4. (a) Until the bus/(b) will not get the signal, / (c) it will not / (d) leave the stand. / (e) No error
5. (a) If she had money/ (b) she will have/ (c) lent it/ (d) to me. / (e) No error
6. (a) If I was you/ (b) I would not/(c) tolerate her / (d) for a moment. / (e) No error
7. (a) Suppose he/(b) does not attend the meeting/ (c) what could/ (d) we do ? / (e) No error
8. (a) Supposing if he / (b) does not reach / (c) the examination centre in time, / (d) what will his teacher do? / (e) No error
9. (a) If you saw / (b) a ghost what / (c) will your/ (d) reaction be?/ (e) No error
10. (a) If I had/(b) two cars, / (c) I would have given / (d) one to you./ (e) No error
11. (a) If we will/(b) heat camphor / (c) it turns / (d) to vapour. / (e) No error
12. (a) Suppose if you are / (b) late, you will not be / (c) allowed to enter the examination hall. / (e) No error.
13. (a) Unless / (b) he will not understand/(c) the importance of this project/ (c) he will not / (d) work sincerely. / (e) No error

14. (a) If he tried again,/ (b) he can win/(c) the race/ (d) with decent margin. / (e) No error
15. (a) I will wait/ (b) for her / (c) unless / (d) she comes. / (e) No error
16. (a) If I was / (b) you I / (c) would never/ (d) talk to him . / (e) No error
17. (a) If I were / (b) the Richest person of India / (c) I will work for the / (d) welfare of the poor. / (e) No error
18. (a) If he would have come to me / (b) I would have / (c) given him the / (d) money he needed / (e) No error
19. (a) If he worked/ (b) he can /(c) get the job / (d) in time / (e) No error
20. (a) If I was /(b) a Rockstar/ (c) I would visit / (d) every country of the world / (e) No error

Solutions

1. (a); Change 'If she will work hard' into 'If she works hard '. 'Will' is not used in the 'If clause'.
2. (b); Change 'before the teacher will come' into 'before the teacher comes '.
3. (d); Change 'result is declared' into 'result has declared'. If the 2nd action takes place after the 1st action has already finished, the 1st action will be in present perfect tense.
4. (b); Remove 'will not'. 'Not' and 'will' do not come after 'unless'. Change 'get' into 'gets'
5. (b); Change 'will have lent' into 'would lend'. See the given formula-

$$\text{If} + \text{S} + \text{V}_2, \quad \text{S} + \text{would} + \text{V}_1$$
6. (a); Change 'was' into 'were'. 'Was' is not used in imaginary sentence.
7. (c); Change 'could' into 'can'. The sentence is not of past ability.
8. (a); Remove 'if' . 'supposing' and 'if' mean the same. When used together, they make the sentence superfluous.
9. (c); Change 'will' into 'would'.
10. (c); Change 'I would have given' into 'I would give'.
11. (a); Remove 'will'.
12. (a); Remove 'if'. 'Suppose' and 'if' mean the same. When used together, they make the sentence superfluous.
13. (b); Change 'he will not understand' into 'he understands'. 'Not' and 'will' do not come after 'unless'.
14. (b); Change 'can' into 'could'. The sentence is in past.
15. (c); Change 'unless' into 'until'. Until is time oriented whereas unless is action oriented.
16. (a); Change 'was' into 'were'. 'Was' is not used in imaginary position.
17. (c); Change 'will' to 'would'.
18. (a); Change 'If he would have come' into 'If he had come'. See the given formula-

$$\text{If} + \text{S} + \text{had} + \text{V}_3, \quad \text{S} + \text{would} + \text{have} + \text{V}_3$$
19. (b); Change 'can' into 'could'. The sentence is in past.
20. (a); Change 'was' into 'were'. 'Was' is not used in imaginary position.

Nouns

Noun is the name of a person, place, thing, animal, or idea. Like Ram, happiness, chain, etc.

Noun can be classified into four groups.

Which are as follows:

- (i) Proper Noun
- (ii) Common Noun
- (iii) Collective Noun
- (iv) Material Noun

(i) Proper Noun: Proper Noun Denotes a particular person, place or thing.

For Ex - India, Calcutta, Ramesh, The Ganga, etc.

(ii) Common Noun: Common Noun is the name given in common to every person or thing of the same class or kind.

For Ex - Table, Glass, Town, King etc.

(iii) Collective Noun: Collective Noun denotes a group or collection of similar individuals considered as one complete whole.

Some of the collective nouns are given below:-

Examples of Collective Noun.

1. A **band** of musicians.
2. A **board** of directors, etc.
3. A **bevy** of girls, women, officers etc.
4. A **bunch** of grapes, keys, etc.
5. A **bundle** of sticks and hay.
6. A **caravan** of merchants, pilgrims, travellers.
7. A **chain/range** of mountains or hills.
8. A **choir** of singers.
9. A **class** of students.
10. A **retinue** of servants/ attendants.
11. A **clump/ grove** of trees.
12. A **code** of laws.
13. A **cluster/ constellation/ galaxy** of stars.
14. A **company/ regiment/ army** of soldiers.
15. A **convoy** of ships, cars etc. moving under an escort.
16. A **course** or series of lectures.
17. A **crew** of sailors.
18. A **crowd/ mob** of people.
19. A **curriculum** of studies.
20. A **flight** of steps, stairs.
21. A **fleet** of ships or motorcars.

22. A flock of geese, sheep and birds.
23. A gang of robbers, labourers.
24. A garland/bunch/ bouquet of flowers.
25. A heap of ruins, sand, stones.
26. A herd of cattle.
27. A litter of puppies.
28. A pack of hounds, cards.
29. A pair of shoes, scissors, compasses, trousers.
30. A series of events.
31. A sheaf of corn, arrows.
32. A swarm of ants, bees or flies.
33. A train of carriages, followers etc.
34. A troop of horses (cavalry)
35. A volley of shots, bullets.
36. A forum of people (discussing issues)
37. A congregation of people (discussing religious issues)

(iv) **Material Noun:** Material Noun denotes matter or substance of which a thing is made.
For Ex - Iron, Silver, Gold, Milk, etc.

(v) **Abstract Noun:** An Abstract Noun is usually the name of a quality, action, or state considered apart from the object to which it belongs.
For Ex -

Quality	Action	State
Goodness	Laughter	Childhood
kindness	Theft	Boyhood
Whiteness	Movement	Youth
Darkness	Judgement	Slavery
Hardness	Hatred	Sleep
Brightness	Heroism	Sickness

Abstract Noun are generally formed from verbs, Adjectives and common Nouns.

(a) **From Verbs:**

live	life
know	knowledge
see	sight
advise	advice
laugh	laughter
please	pleasure
grow	growth
govern	government
serve	service
obey	obedience
practise	practice
think	thought

(b) From Adjectives

brave	bravery
great	greatness
poor	poverty
young	youth
wise	wisdom
long	length
deep	depth
grand	grandeur
good	goodness
honest	honesty
just	justice
true	truth
broad	breadth
wide	width
sole	solitude
kind	kindness

(c) From Common Nouns:

boy	boyhood
infant	infancy
thief	theft
slave	slavery
friend	friendship
judge	judgement
girl	girlhood
agent	agency
hero	heroism
bond	bondage
leader	leadership
coward	cowardice

The Noun- Number (Singular/Plural)

On the basis of number, there are two types of noun.

(a) Singular Noun

(b) Plural Noun

Singular Noun: A noun that is used to denote a single (one) person or thing is called singular Noun.

For Ex - Boy, girl, man, bird, tree, etc.

Plural Noun: A noun that is used to denote more than one person or thing is called plural Noun

For Ex - Boys, girls, men birds, trees, etc.

There are some rules which must be followed to ensure grammatical accuracy.

Rule 1: Hyphenated noun does not have plural form.

Ex - (a) He gave me two **hundred-rupees** notes. (change 'rupees' into 'rupee')

(b) He stays in **five-stars** hotels. (change 'stars' into 'star')

Rule 2: Certain nouns/words are used in colloquial English in India which is wrong as the word is literally translated from English to Hindi.

Ex -

Wrong

1. Cousin brother / Cousin sister
2. Pick pocket
3. Good name
4. Big blunder
5. Strong breeze
6. Bad dream
7. Proudly
8. According to me

Correct

1. Cousin
2. Pick pocket
3. Name
4. Blunder (means a big mistake)
5. Strong wind (Breeze is always light and gentle)
6. Nightmare
7. Proud
8. In my opinion

We generally get confused while using the following nouns:-

- | | |
|--|--|
| (a) Floor (the flat surface of a room) | (a) Ground (surface of the earth) |
| (b) Skill (we acquire it by learning) | (b) Talent (A natural ability) |
| (c) Envy (a wish to possess that the other person has.) | (c) Jealousy (a feeling that arises out of fear of losing that you have.) |

How Plural is formed

Generally, the Plurals of nouns are formed by adding 's' to the singular form.

For Ex -

boy - boys	Girl - girls
Bird - birds	Cow - cows
Ship - ships	Desk - desks
Pencil - pencils	Book - Books
Cassette - cassettes	Film - films

But, there are some rules of changing singular nouns into plural ones.

Rule 1: If -s, -ss, -sh, -ch, -x and -z are the last letters of noun, put -es to the end to make them plural.

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Class	Classes	Mass	Masses
Kiss	Kisses	Toss	Tosses
Miss	Misses	Bus	Buses
Brush	Brushes	Dish	Dishes
Bush	Bushes	Watch	Watches
Bench	Benches	Match	Matches
Branch	Branches	Tax	Taxes
Box	Boxes	Topaz	Topazes

But, in case of Stomach (Pronounced as Stomak), Monarch (Pronounced as Monark) only s is needed at their end to make them plural.

Stomach Stomachs

Monarch Monarchs

Rule 2: If there is -O in the end of a noun, put -es to the end for plural.

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Hero	Heroes	Zero	Zeroes
Volcano	Volcanoes	Mango	Mangoes
Mosquito	Mosquitoes	Echo	Echoes
Potato	Potatoes	Buffalo	Buffaloes
Negro	Negroes	Cargo	Cargoes
Bingo	Bingo		

There are some exceptions where only -s is needed for a plural one in -o ending nouns.

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Photo	Photos	Piano	Pianos
Dynamo	Dynamos	Canto	Cantos
Quarto	Quartos	Momento	Momentos
Solo	Solos	Stereo	Stereos

We generally get confused while using the following nouns:-

- | | |
|---|---|
| (a) Floor (the flat surface of a room) | (a) Ground (surface of the earth) |
| (b) Skill (we acquire it by learning) | (b) Talent (A natural ability) |
| (c) Envy (a wish to possess that the other person has.) | (c) Jealousy (a feeling that arises out of fear of losing that you have.) |

How Plural is formed

Generally, the Plurals of nouns are formed by adding 's' to the singular form.

For Ex -

boy - boys

Bird - birds

Ship - ships

Pencil - pencils

Cassette - cassettes

Girl - girls

Cow - cows

Desk - desks

Book - Books

Film - films

But, there are some rules of changing singular nouns into plural ones.

Rule 1: If -s, -ss, -sh, -ch, -x and -z are the last letters of noun, put -es to the end to make them plural.

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Class	Classes	Mass	Masses
Kiss	Kisses	Toss	Tosses
Miss	Misses	Bus	Buses
Brush	Brushes	Dish	Dishes
Bush	Bushes	Watch	Watches
Bench	Benches	Match	Matches
Branch	Branches	Tax	Taxes
Box	Boxes	Topaz	Topazes

But, in case of Stomach (Pronounced as Stomak), Monarch (Pronounced as Monark) only s is needed at their end to make them plural.

Stomach Stomachs

Monarch Monarchs

Rule 2: If there is -O in the end of a noun, put -es to the end for plural.

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Hero	Heroes	Zero	Zeroes
Volcano	Volcanoes	Mango	Mangoes
Mosquito	Mosquitoes	Echo	Echoes
Potato	Potatoes	Buffalo	Buffaloes
Negro	Negroes	Cargo	Cargoes
Bingo	Bingo		

There are some exceptions where only -s is needed for a plural one in -o ending nouns.

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Photo	Photos	Piano	Pianos
Dynamo	Dynamos	Canto	Cantos
Quarto	Quartos	Momento	Momentos
Solo	Solos	Stereo	Stereos

Rule 3 : If there are double vowels to the end of noun, put only -s to the end of that noun for plural.

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Radio	Radios	Ratio	Ratios
Studio	Studios	Portfolio	Portfolios
Cuckoo	Cuckoos	Bamboo	Bamboos

Rule 4 : If -y is the last letter of a noun and that -y is preceded by a consonant, then change y into ies for the plural forms.

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Spy	Spies	Baby	Babies
History	Histories	Lady	Ladies
Fly	Flies	Sky	Skies
Story	Stories	City	Cities
Army	Armies	Pony	Ponies

Rule 5 : If -y is the last letter of a noun and that -y is preceded by a vowel, put only -s to the end of that noun for plural.

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Lay	Lays	Bay	Bay
Ray	Rays	Prey	Preys
Key	Keys	Storey	Storeys
Tray	Trays	Day	Days
Clay	Clays	Play	Plays

Rule 6 : If -f or -fe are the last letters of a noun, then change -f or -fe into 'ves'.

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Knife	Knives	Life	Lives
Wife	Wives	Thief	Thieves
Leaf	Leaves	Loaf	Loaves
Calf	Calves	Handkerchief	Handkerchieves
Wolf	Wolves	Shelf	Shelves
Self	Selves		

Yet, there are some exceptions to this rule, such as:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Proof	Proofs	Roof	Roofs
Chief	Chiefs	Reef	Reefs
Gulf	Gulfs	Belief	Beliefs
Grief	Griefs	Brief	Briefs
Serf	Serfs	Dwarf	Dwarfs
Hoof	Hoofs	Strife	Strifes

Rule 7 : It is found that a few nouns form their plural by changing the inside vowel of the singular form.

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Man	Men	Woman	Women
Tooth	Teeth	Goose	Geese
Mouse	Mice	Louse	Lice
Foot	Feet		

Rule 8 : There are a few nouns that form their plural by adding en to the singular.

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Ox	Oxen	Child	Children

Rule 9 : There are some nouns which have their singular and plural forms alike.

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Swine	Swine	Sheep	Sheep
Deer	Deer	Trout	Trout
Salmon	Salmon	Pair	Pair
Dozen	Dozen	Score	Score
Gross	Gross	Stone (unit)	Stone

Rule 10: There are some nouns which are only used in the plural. They take plural verb with them.

(a) Names of instruments which have two parts forming a kind of pair.

For Ex - Ballows, spectacles, scissors, tongs, pincers etc.

(b) Names of certain articles of dress.

For Ex - Trousers, breeches, drawers etc.

(c) Certain other nouns.

For Ex - Annals, thanks, proceeds (of a sale), tidings, environs, nuptials, obsequies, assets, chattels, odds, amends, seals, shambles, vegetables, troops, particulars, aborigines, alms, ashes, arrears, dregs, eaves, earnings, sweepings, etc.

Rule 11: There are some plural forms of nouns which are actually singular. They take singular verb with them.

For Ex - Innings, mathematics, news, civics, politics, physics, ethics, economics, mechanics, summons, measles, mumps, rickets, singles, billiards, athletics etc.

For Ex - Mathematics is an easy subject. (Mathematics is singular number)

If plural looking subjects are particularised or possessed, they become as plural nouns.

(a) My Mathematics are strong.

↓
Possessed

↓
Plural Number

(b) The politics of our state are dirty.

↓
Particularised

↓
plural number

(c) The summons was issued by the magistrate

↓
singular number

Rule 12: The following nouns are always used in singular number.

For Ex - Scenery, machinery, poetry, stationery, sultry, jewellery, crockery, luggage, baggage, breakage, haltage, percentage, knowledge, postage, wastage, furniture, information, traffic, coffee, dust etc.

Rule 13: Certain Collective Nouns, though singular in form, are always used as plurals.

For Ex - Poultry, cattle, vermin, people, gentry, police and peasantry etc.

Rule 14: In Compound Nouns, we make their plural forms only by adding 's' to the main word.

Singular	Plural
Father-in-law	Fathers-in-law
Daughter-in-law	Daughters-in-law
Mother-in-law	Mothers-in-law
Commander-in-chief	Commanders-in-chief
Step-daughter	step-daughters
Maid-servant	Maid-servants
Looker-on	Lookers-on
Passer-by	Passers-by
Man-of-war	Men-of-war
Coat-of-mill	Coats-of-mill

Now, look at these examples:

Singular	Plural
Man killer	Man killers
Chief Minister	Chief Ministers
Woman hater	Woman haters
Cupful	Cupfuls
Handful	Handfuls
Drawback	Draw backs

Rule 15: Noun borrowed from other languages in English have their special rules to change them into plural.

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Datum	Data	Ditum	Dita
Erratum	Errata	Bacterium	Bacteria
Referendum	Referenda	Momorandum	Memoranda
Agendum	Agenda	Medium	Media
Sanatorium	Sanatoria	Criterion	Criteria
Phenomenon	Phenomena	Oasis	Oases
Thesis	These	Hypothesis	Hypotheses
Analysis	Analyses	Crisis	Crises
Index	Indice/Indices		

(c) The summons was issued by the magistrate

↓
singular number

Rule 12: The following nouns are always used in singular number.

For Ex - Scenery, machinery, poetry, stationery, sultry, jewellery, crockery, luggage, baggage, breakage, haltage, percentage, knowledge, postage, wastage, furniture, information, traffic, coffee, dust etc.

Rule 13: Certain Collective Nouns, though singular in form, are always used as plurals.

For Ex - Poultry, cattle, vermin, people, gentry, police and peasantry etc.

Rule 14: In Compound Nouns, we make their plural forms only by adding 's' to the main word.

Singular	Plural
Father-in-law	Fathers-in-law
Daughter-in-law	Daughters-in-law
Mother-in-law	Mothers-in-law
Commander-in-chief	Commanders-in-chief
Step-daughter	step-daughters
Maid-servant	Maid-servants
Looker-on	Lookers-on
Passer-by	Passers-by
Man-of-war	Men-of-war
Coat-of-mill	Coats-of-mill

Now, look at these examples:

Singular	Plural
Man killer	Man killers
Chief Minister	Chief Ministers
Woman hater	Woman haters
Cupful	Cupfuls
Handful	Handfuls
Drawback	Draw backs

Rule 15: Noun borrowed from other languages in English have their special rules to change them into plural.

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Datum	Data	Ditum	Dita
Erratum	Errata	Bacterium	Bacteria
Referendum	Referenda	Momorandum	Memoranda
Agendum	Agenda	Medium	Media
Sanatorium	Sanatoria	Criterion	Criteria
Phenomenon	Phenomena	Oasis	Oases
Thesis	These	Hypothesis	Hypotheses
Analysis	Analyses	Crisis	Crises
Index	Indice/Indices		

Rule 16: Some –um ending Latin nouns take only –s in plural form.

Singular	Plural
Harmonium	Harmoniums
Forum	Forums
Pendulum	Pendulums
Stadium	Stadiums
Quorum	Quorums
Premium	Premiums

Rule 17: Noun + Proposition + the same noun remain always singular in use.

For Ex -

Village after village – correct

Match after match – correct

Row upon row – correct

Word for word. – correct

But,

Villages after villages – wrong

Matches after matches – wrong

Rows upon rows – wrong

word for words – wrong

Rule 18: The digits, some words and abbreviations take their plural form in the following ways:

Singular	Plural
70	70s
21	21s
if	ifs
M.A.	M.As (not M.A.'s)
B.A.	B.As (not B.A.'s)
M.L.A.	M.L.As (not M.L.A.'s)
M.P.	M.Ps

Rule 19: Some nouns have two meanings in the singular but only one in plural.

	Singular	Plural
Light	1. radiance 2. a lamp	Lights : Lamps
Practice	1. habit 2. exercise of a profession	Practices : habits
Powder	1. dust 2. a dose of medicine in fine grains like dust	Powders : doses of medicine
People	1. nation 2. Men and women	Peoples : nations

Rule 20: Some nouns have two forms for the plural, each with a somewhat different meaning.

Singular	Plural
Brother	Brothers : Sons of the same parent Brethren : members of a society of a community.
Cloth	Cloths : kinds or pieces of cloth. Clothes : garments.
Die	Dies : stamps for coining. Dice : small cubes used in games.
Fish	Fishes : taken separately.
	Fish : collectively
Genius	Geniuses : persons of great talent
	Genii : spirits
Index	Indexes : tables of contents to books Indices : signs used in algebra
Penny	Pennies : number of coins. Pence : amount in value

Rule 21: Some nouns have one meaning in the singular and more than one in the plural.

Singular	Plural
Colour : hue	Colours : 1. Hues 2. the flag of a regiment
Custom : habit	Customs : 1. habits. 2. Duties levied on imports.
Effect : result	Effects : 1. results 2. property
Manner : method	Manners : 1. methods 2. correct behaviour
Moral : a moral lesson	Morals : 1. moral lessons 2. conduct
Number : quantity	Numbers : 1. quantities 2. verses
Pain : Suffering	Pains : 1. sufferings 2. care, exertion
Premise : proposition	Premises : 1. propositions 2. buildings.
Quarter : fourth part	Quarters : 1. Fourth part. 2. Lodgings

Singular	Plural
Spectacle : a sight	Spectacles : 1. sights. 2. Eye-glasses
Letter : letter of the alphabet	Letters : 1. letters of the alphabet 2. epistles 3. literature
Ground : earth	Grounds : 1. enclosed land 2. attached to house 3. reasons dregs

Rule 22: Some nouns change their meaning when we make them plural.

Singular	Plural
Air : atmosphere	Airs : affected manners
Alphabet : letter	Alphabets : languages
Advice : counsel	Advices : information
Abuse : bad language	Abuses : Evil
Compass : extent, range	Compasses : an instrument for drawing circles
Force : strength	Forces : military forces
Good : benefit, well-being	Goods : merchandise
Physic : medicine	Physics : natural science
Practice : habit	Practices : traditions
Iron : a kind of metal	Irons : fetters
Light : radiant	Lights : lamps
Respect : regard	Respects : compliments
Work : duty	Works : creations

Rule 23: (a) Abstract Nouns have no plural.

For Ex - Hope, charity, love, kindness, happiness, hatred etc.

When such words do appear in the plural, they are used as common nouns.

For Ex - Kindness = acts of kindness.

Provocations = instances or cases of provocation.

(b) There are also some names of substances or materials which are never used in plurals. They are called **Material Nouns**.

For Ex - Copper, iron, tin, wood etc.

But, when these words are used in the plural, they become Common nouns and also, their meanings are changed.

For Ex - Coppers-Copper coins.

Irons - fetters.

Tins - cans made of tin.

Woods - forests.

The Noun - Gender

In grammar, gender is the sexual classification of noun.

Gender can be divided into four categories.

Which are as follows:

- (i) Masculine Gender (which denotes male sex)
- (ii) Feminine Gender (Which denotes female sex)
- (iii) Common Gender (which denotes both male and female)
- (iv) Neuter Gender (which denotes no sex and is used for non-living things)

Rules for changing masculine nouns into feminine nouns:

- (1) By using a different word.

For Ex -

Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
Father	Mother	Brother	Sister
Husband	Wife	Boy	Girl
Uncle	Aunt	Pappa	Mamma
Nephew	Niece	Man	Woman
King	Queen	Gentleman	Lady
Sir	Madam	Son	Daughter
Cock	Hen	Boar	Sow
Stag	Hind	Swan	Nymph
Widower	Widow	Fox	Vixen
Beau	Betle	Gander	Goose
Bachelor	Maid, Spinster	Drone	Bee
Horse (or Stallion)	Mare	Bullock	Heifer
Hart	Roe	Buck	Doe
Wizard	Witch	Bull (or Ox)	Cow
Earl	Countess	Groom	Bride
Drake	Duck		
Colt	Filly		
Dog (or Hound)	Bitch		
Monk (or Friar)	Nun		
Lad	Lass		

- (2) By adding a syllable (-ess, -ine, -trix, -a, etc.)

For Ex -

Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
Lion	Lioness	Heir	Heiress
Host	Hostess	Poet	Poetess
Priest	Priestess	Mayor	Mayoress
Patron	Patroness	Peer	Peeress
Benefactor	Benefactress	Conductor	Conductress
Negro	Negress	Enchanter	Enchantress
Instructor	Instructress	Founder	Foundress
Waiter	Waitress	Traitor	Traitress
Seamster	Seamstress	Tempter	Temptress
Songster	Songstress	Preceptor	Preceptress
Murderer	Murderess	Sorcerer	Sorceress

(3) By substituting a feminine word for a masculine in compound words.

For Ex -

Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
Peacock	Peahen	Grandfather	Grandmother
Billy-goat	Nanny-goat	Cock-sparrow	Hen-sparrow
Foster-father	Foster-mother	Czar	Czarina
Jack-ass	Jenny-ass	Testator	Testatrix
Viceroy	Vicereine	Prophet	Prophetess
Executor	Executrix	Steward	Stewardess
Shepherd	Shepherdess	Manager	Manageress
Viscount	Viscountess	Baron	Baroness
Jew	Jewess	Signor	Signora
Author	Authoress	Giant	Giantess
Count	Countess	Hero	Heroine
Don	Donna	Sultan	Sultana
Administrator	Asministratrix	Signor	Signora

Again, -ess is added after dropping the vowel of the masculine ending.

For Ex -

Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
Abbot	Abbess	Duke	Cuchess
Emperor	Empress	Actor	Actress
Hunter	Huntress	Master	Mistress
Marquis	Marchioness	Prince	Princess
Tiger	Tigress	Votary	Votaress
he-ass	She-ass	Land-lord	Land-lady
Man-servant	Maid-servant	Milk-man	Milk-maid
School-master	School-mistress	Man-kind	Woman-kind
Washer-man	Washer-woman	Bull-calf	Cow-calf
Step-son	Step-daughter	He-bear	She-bear
Buck-rabbit	Doe-rabbit	Great-uncle	Great-aunt

Note: 1. Some Masculine Nouns are used in the Common Gender.

For Ex - Actor, Advocate, Author, Chairman, Doctor, Hound, Lawyer, Man, Painter, Poet, Teacher, Tutor, Hunter

2. Some Feminine Nouns are used in the Common Gender.

For Ex - Cow, Duck, Bee

3. Some Feminine Nouns have no corresponding Masculine forms.

For Ex - House-wife (mistress of the house)

Virgin (an unmarried woman)

Flirt (woman pretending to make love)

Virago (a turbulent woman)

Prude (a woman of a affected modesty)

- For Ex - Captain, Judge, Knight, Squire, Parson

(A) Apostrophe is used in the following ways to express possession.

Living things

Ex - (a) Mohan's book (b) A cow's horn (c) A woman's purse

(B) If a plural noun ends in 's/es', 's' is not added while apostrophe with the plural form.

Ex - (a) boys' college

(b) Girls' school

Note: If plural form is different from singular form, 's' comes with both the forms.

Ex - (a) Child's play, Children's school.

(b) Man's duty, Men's wear.

(c) Working women's hostel

(C) When noun ends in hissing sound, 's' is not added after apostrophe.

Ex - (a) For peace' sake

(b) for conscience' sake

(c) for goodness' sake

(d) Ganesh' idol

(e) for Jesus'sake

Note: God's sake

(D) Apostrophe is not used with possessive pronouns (his, hers, yours, hours, theirs)

Ex - Yours faithfully, yours truly

(E) Apostrophe can come only at the end of the compound nouns.

(a) Commander-in-chief's orders.

(b) My son-in-law's sister.

(F) 'Appostrophe' is not used with non-living things. We use 'of' :

Ex - Table's leg (✗)

Leg of table (✓)

Exceptions:

(1) When a non-living thing is personified

Ex - (a) Sun's fury

(b) Nature's love

(2) Nouns related to 'time/weight/place'

Ex - (a) a day's leave

(b) arm's length

(c) a pound's weight

(3) With respectable nouns

Ex - (a) court's order

(b) At duty's call

(4) With phrases

Ex - (a) at wit's end

(b) at a stone's throw

(5) With heavenly objects

Ex - (a) Earth's atmosphere

(G) Do not use double apostrophe.

Ex - (a) My wife's secretary's mother has expired. (✗)

The mother of my wife's secretary has expired. (✓)

(b) Mrs. Sharma the society's chariman's proposal was rejected by the members of the society. (✗)

The proposal of Mrs. Sharma, the chairperson of society, was rejected by the member of the society. (✓)

(H) 's' is used with anybody/nobody/everybody/somebody/anyone/someone/no one/everyone.

- Ex - (a) Everyone's concern is no one's concern.
 (b) Everydoby's business is nobody's business.

• If 'else' is used with anybody/ no body etc, 'apostrophe' will be used with 'else'.

- Ex - (a) I can rely on your words, not **somebody else's**.

- (b) I obey your orders and **nobody else's**.

(Here, it will be wrong to write somebody's else/nobody's else.)

- (4) **Dative Case:** It noun or Pronoun has been called or addressed, It is called Dative Case.

For Ex - Shivam, Go there.

Read loudly, Priya.

Exercise

Directions: Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical error in it. The error, if any, will be in one part of the sentence. The number of that part is the answer. If there is no error, the answer is '4' i.e. No error, (Ignore the errors of punctuation, if any).

1. Jaya Jyostna went (a)/ to her friend's house (b)/ and gave her two ten-rupee note. (c)/ No error (d). (c)
2. There was (a)/ no money in the bank in Dhananjay's (b)/ and Mritunjay's joint account. (c)/ No error (d) (b)
3. Thousand (a)/ of rupees were (b)/ spent by him. (c)/ No error (d) (a)
4. The machineries are (a)/ not functioning properly (b)/ these days. (c)/ No error (d) (a) machinery.
5. The poetries (a)/ of R.N. Tagore has been taught (b)/ in the class. (c)/ No error (d) (a) Poetry
6. Thousand of people (a)/ had already been killed (b)/ in the accident near Fatuha. (c)/ No error (d)
7. Five thousand (a)/ rupees is a large amount (b)/ for everybody. (c)/ No error (d) (b)
8. There is (a)/ no place (b)/ in the compartment. (c)/ No error (d) 4000m (b)
9. Mr. Sharma is one of the (a)/ best teachers (b)/ in our school. (c)/ No error (d) (b)
10. One of the important lessons (a)/ he taught me was to save (b)/ at least thirty percent of my gross income. (c)/ No error (d) (a)
11. The table's legs (a)/ have been (b)/ elaborately carved. (c)/ No error (d) a (legs of Table)
12. None of the student (a)/ in the class scored below the (b)/ given cut-off marks. (c)/ No error (d) (a)
13. He is (a)/ one of the tallest boys (b)/ in the class. (c)/ No error (d) (b)
14. I have (a)/ many works (b)/ to do. (c)/ No error (d) Some work (b)
15. Mritunjay prefers (a)/ extra sugar in (b)/ his tea. (c)/ No error (d) (b)
16. All the child playing (a)/ at the beach ran towards Sam when (b)/ they heard him shout. (c)/ No error (d) (a) child
17. Cattles are (a)/ not allowed to (b)/ enter this place. (c)/ No error (d)
18. It is a pity that (a)/ even five year old boys are (b)/ engaged in hazardous factories. (c)/ No error (d) (b)
19. I visited Anna's and Steve's house (a)/ twice but found (b)/ the couple absent. (c)/ No error (d) (a)
20. A ton's weight (a)/ is too heavy for anyone to (b)/ carry on his head. (c)/ No error (d)
21. He did not approve (a)/ of his son raising stupid questions and thereby (b)/ vexing the teacher. (c)/ No error (d)
22. America's problems (a)/ are, however, not so serious (b)/ and awful as India's (c)/ No error (d) (c)
23. The Finance Minister boasts of improving (a)/ the economic condition of (b)/ the country. (c)/ No error (d) (c)
24. For your sake as well as for your wife (a)/ we all wish that you may (b)/ get that job. (c)/ No error (d)
25. The expert mason reported to the owner of the hotel that (a)/ there was no question (b)/ of the wall's falling down. (c)/ No error (d) of the falling of wall (c)
26. As we are told, this idea of Mrs. Gandhi's (a)/ was totally valid in the (b)/ present condition of India. (c)/ No error (d) (a)

- one's
- (c) 27. The teacher said to us that one ought (a)/ to work hard in order (b)/ to attain one's goal. (c)/ No error (d) even us!
- (c) 28. Being sure of his success, he told his friends that (a)/ he would never forget (b)/ even his enemies name. (c)/ No error (d)
- (c) 29. Very few soldiers dared to turn (a)/ a deaf ear to their (b)/ Commander's-in-Chief's orders. (c)/ No error (d)
- (a) 30. Your son-in-law's friends is seriously ill (a)/ and he wants you (b)/ to see him as soon as possible. (c)/ No error (d)
- (c) 31. Two thirds (a) / of the (b) / work are done. (c) / No error (d)
- (c) 32. The sceneries (a)/ of Shillong (b)/ are beautiful. (c)/ No error (d). scenery
- (c) 33. I have (a)/ learnt the (b)/ alphabets. (c)/ No error (d)
- (c) 34. All the (a)/ furniture (b)/ have been sold. (c)/ No error (d)
- (a) 35. The cattle (a)/ are grazing (b)/ in the field. (c)/ No error (d)
- (b) 36. The police (a)/ has (b)/ arrested him. (c) / No error (d) have
- (a) 37. People (a)/ here (b)/ are good. (c) / No error (d)
- (c) 38. He (a)/ loves (b)/ the music. (c) / No error (d)
- (c) 39. The knowledge (a)/ is (b)/ power. (c)/ No error (d)
- (b) 40. The news (a)/ are (b)/ true. (c)/ No error (d) is
- (c) 41. This house (a)/ is built (b)/ of bricks. (c)/ No error (d)
- (c) 42. The fisherman (a)/ has caught (b)/ many fishes. (c)/ No error (d) fish
- (c) 43. His son-in-law (a)/ are (b)/ rich men. (c)/ No error (d)
- (c) 44. I have (a)/ two (b)/ daughters-in-law. (c)/ No error (d)
- (c) 45. Give me (a)/ a ten (b)/ rupees note. (c)/ No error (d)
- (c) 46. He is (a)/ a two (b) years old boy. (c)/ No error (d)
- (b) 47. It's a (a) / three years (b)/ degree course. (c)/ No error (d)
- (b) 48. It's a (a)/ two days (b)/ long program. (c)/ No error (d)
- (b) 49. It's a (a)/ three members (b)/ committee. (c)/ No error (d)
- (b) 50. I need (a)/ two dozens (b)/ pencils. (c)/ No error (d)
- (b) 51. One of (a)/ the boy (b)/ has done the work. (c)/ No error (d)
- (b) 52. Each of (a)/ the student (b)/ has got a prize. (c)/ No error (d)
- (c) 53. Six miles (a)/ are a (b)/ long distance. (c)/ No error (d)
- (c) 54. Six days (a)/ are a (b)/ long period. (c)/ No error. (d)
- (c) 55. I purchased (a)/ some (b)/ fruits. (c)/ No error. (d)
- (c) 56. He has (a)/ gone to (b)/ buy vegetable. (c)/ No error (d)
- (c) 57. His whereabouts (a)/ are (b)/ not known. (c)/ No error (d)
- (b) 58. He has (a)/ pain (b) all (b) / over his body. (c)/ No error (d)
- (c) 59. He gave (a)/ us all (b)/ the information. (c)/ No error (d)
- (b) 60. There are (a)/ many sheeps and deers (b)/ here. (c)/ No error (d)

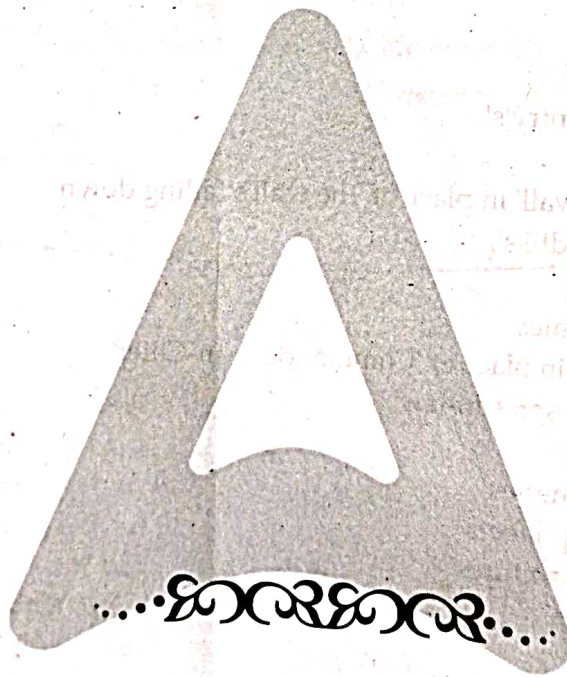
57
60

Solutions

- (c) Use 'ten-rupee note' in place of 'ten-rupees note'.
- (b) Use 'Dhananjay' in place of 'Dhananjay's'.
- (a) Use 'Thousands' in place of 'Thousand'.
- (a) Use 'The machinery is' in place of 'The machineries are' because machinery is an 'Uncountable Noun'.
- (a) Use 'The poetry' in place of 'The poetries'.
- (a) Use 'Thousands of people' in place of 'Thousand of people'.
- (b) Use 'rupees' in place of 'rupee'.

8. (b) Use 'room' in place of 'place'. The word 'room' is used with some nouns like train, bus, car, ship, aeroplane etc.
There is no place for you in this car. (x)
There is no room for you in this car. (.)
9. (b) Use 'teachers' in place of 'teacher'.
10. (a) Use 'lessons' in place of 'lesson'.
11. (a) Use 'The legs of the table' in place of 'The table's legs'.
12. (a) Use 'None of the students' in place of 'None of the student'.
13. (b) Use 'boys' in place of 'boy'.
14. (b) Use 'Much work' or 'a lot of work' in place of 'Many works' because 'work' is an uncountable noun.
15. (b) Use 'sugar' in place of 'sugars'.
16. (a) Use 'All the children' in place of 'All the child'.
17. (a) Use 'cattle' in place of 'cattles'.
18. (b) Use 'five year old boys' in place of 'five years old boys'.
19. (a) Use 'Anna and Steve's' in place of 'Anna's and Steve's'.
20. (d) No error.
21. (b) Use 'son's' in place of 'son'.
22. (c) Use 'India's' in place of 'India'.
23. (c) Use 'country' in place of 'Country's'.
24. (a) Use 'wife's' in place of 'wife'.
25. (c) Use 'the falling down of the wall' in place of 'the wall's falling down'.
26. (a) Use 'Gandhi' in place of 'Gandhi's'.
27. (c) Use 'One's' in place of 'One'.
28. (c) Use 'enemies' in place of 'enemies'.
29. (c) Use 'Commander-in-Chief's' in place of 'Commander's-in-Chief'.
30. (a) Use 'son-in-law's' in place of 'son's-in-law'.
31. (c) Use 'is' in place of 'are'.
32. (a) Use 'scenery' in place of 'sceneries'.
33. (c) Use 'alphabet' in place of 'alphabets'.
34. (b) Use 'furniture' in place of 'furnitures'.
35. (a) Use 'cattle' in place of 'cattles'.
36. (b) Use 'has' in place of 'have'.
37. (a) Use 'people' in place of 'peoples'.
38. (c) Remove 'the'.
39. (a) Remove 'The'.
40. (b) Use 'is' in place of 'are'.
41. (c) Use 'brick' in place of 'bricks'.
42. (c) Use 'fish' in place of 'fishes'.
43. (a) Use 'son-in-law' in place of 'son-in-laws'.
44. (c) Use 'daughters-in-law' in place of 'daughter-in-law'.
45. (c) Use 'rupee' in place of 'rupees'.
46. (c) Use 'year' in place of 'years'.
47. (c) Use 'year' in place of 'years'.
48. (b) Use 'day' in place of 'days'.
49. (b) Use 'member' in place of 'members'.
50. (b) Use 'dozen' in place of 'dozens'.

51. (b) Use 'boys' in place of 'boy'
52. (b) Use 'students' in place of 'student'
53. (b) Use 'is' in place of 'are'
54. (b) Use 'is' in place of 'are'
55. (c) Use 'fruit' in place of 'fruits'
56. (c) Use 'vegetables' in place of 'vegetable'
57. (b) Use 'is' in place of 'are'
58. (b) Use 'pain' in place of 'pains'
59. (c) Use 'information' in place of 'informations'
60. (b) Use 'sheep and deer' in place of 'sheeps and deers'



Pronouns

A **Pronoun** is a word that is used in place of Noun in order to avoid repetition of a noun in a sentence make our language stylistic.

Pronouns are of Ten Types:

1. Personal Pronouns
2. Possessive Pronouns
3. Reflexive Pronouns
4. Demonstrative Pronouns
5. Relative Pronouns
6. Interrogative Pronouns
7. Reciprocal Pronouns
8. Universal Pronouns
9. Distributive Pronouns
10. Indefinite Pronouns

I. PERSONAL PRONOUN

Personal Pronouns are used for three persons:

- (i) **The person speaking.** (First person)
- (ii) **The person Spoken to** (Second Person)
- (iii) **The person spoken of.** (Third Person)

Personal Pronouns include – I, we, he, she, it, they, you, me, etc.

Nominative Case	Objective Case
I	me
She	her
They	them
We	us
He	him
It	it
You	you

Use of Personal Pronouns

(i) Use of 'we' and 'I'

We and I are used for first person.

For Ex – I am a teacher.

We go to School.

(ii) Uses of 'He'/'She'

'He'/'She' is used for third Person.

For Ex – He plays cricket.

She goes to market.

(iii) Uses of 'You'

'You' is used for second person.

For Ex – You are a good boy.

You should respect your elders.

(iv) Uses of 'It'

⇒ 'It' is used for animals, infants, insects and non living things.

For Ex – India is a developing country. It has a great cultural heritage.

It is my car.

⇒ 'It' is used to denote 'time', 'weather', 'distance', 'temperature' or any other natural event. It is used only as an 'Introductory subject' and has no meaning.

For Ex - It is raining.

It is Sunday.

It is 6 O' clock.

⇒ 'It' is also used as a subject to emphasize the noun or pronoun.

For Ex - It was she who passed the exam.

It was he who came late.

(v) Uses of 'They'

'They' is the plural form of 'it' and can be used for mankind, animal, bird, non-living, etc. in plural.

For Ex - They are girls (Mankind)

They are chairs. (Non-livings)

They are cats. (Animals)

There are some rules that must be followed while dealing with personal pronouns. They are as follows:

Rule 1: If all the three persons (ie first person (1), Second person (2) and third person (3)) or two out of three persons are coming in a single sentence, then the order of pronouns that is to be followed is '231'.

For Ex - You, he and I have scored good marks. (231)

He and I are going to party (31)

You and He are doing a great job. (23)

Rule 2: If all three persons or two out of three persons are used in a single sentence, which is negative sense, then the order of pronouns that must be followed is '123'

For Ex - I, you, and he are guilty and will be punished.

Rule 3: The order that is to be followed while using Plural Pronouns (They, we, you) is '123'

For Ex - we, you and they will be awarded for the good work we have done.

Rule 4: Words like 'let', 'like', 'betweenand', 'but', 'except' and all prepositions are followed by an objective (accusative) case.

For Ex - He looked at me.

Let me complete this work.

Rule 5: In case of a comparison between two nominative case, the pronoun that is used is also of the nominative case:

For Ex - He is as fast as me. (wrong)

He is as fast as I. (correct)

She is better than him. (wrong)

She is better than he. (correct)

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUN

Possessive Pronouns are used to indicate possession, for example mine, yours, hers, theirs, ours, etc.

Note: Noun is not used after possessive pronoun.

For Ex - This is mine book. (wrong)

This is yours book. (wrong)

Our, your, her, their, etc are called possessive Adjectives.

Note: Noun is used after possessive adjective.

For Ex - That is my car.

This is your pen.

Uses of Possessive Pronouns

(i) When a verb comes in between a noun and a pronoun, possessive Pronoun is used.

For Ex - Yours is the best, mine the worst.

(ii) We can use a Possessive Pronoun as the subject in any sentence.

For Ex - Mine is a new book.

- (iii) Possessive Pronoun can be used as the object of a verb.
For Ex - I have my pen as well as yours.
- (iv) When a pronoun is preceded by 'of', we use possessive pronoun.
For Ex - That pen of yours is lost.

There are some rules which must be followed to ensure grammatical accuracy while studying possessive Pronoun. Some of them are as follows:

- Rule 1:** Possessive Pronouns are not used with the words like 'Separation, leave, excuse, mention, report, pardon, sight, favour'
- For Ex - She needs your favour. (Wrong)
She needs favour from you. (Correct)
- Rule 2:** 'Apostrophe' is not used in Possessive Pronouns.
- For Ex - I have a car. It's colour is red. (Wrong)
I have a car. Its colour is red. (Correct)

III. REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

Reflexive pronoun are formed by joining suffix - Self to Personal Pronouns of the singular number and-selves to personal pronouns of the plural number. For e.g. - myself, ourselves, herself, himself, themselves, etc.

Uses of Reflexive Pronoun.

- It is used after some words like acquit, avail, reconcile, amuse, resign, avenge, adapt, adjust, pride, absent and enjoy.
For Ex - One should avail oneself of the opportunity which life gives.
Note: If absent is used as a verb.
- If the door is affected by the action and the result, Reflexive Pronoun is used.
For Ex - I cut my finger myself.
- Reflexive Pronoun is used when the 'Subject' emphasizes his action or skill.
For Ex - I will myself complete my work.
We will ourselves face this problem.
Note: Reflexive Pronoun is not used as a subject or an object of a sentence unless a noun/pronoun precedes it.
For Ex - Myself Sagar from Punjab. (Wrong)
I am Sagar from Punjab. (Correct)
I myself can do this work. (Correct)
Note: Keep, stop, turn, qualify, bathe, move, rest, hide, etc. are few words which do not take a reflexive pronoun.
For Ex - He hid himself behind the wall. (Wrong)
He hid behind the wall. (Correct)

IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

Demonstrative Pronoun are those pronouns that are used to point towards something specific within a sentence.

For Ex - this, that, these, those, such, one, etc.

Uses of Demonstrative Pronoun

- 'This' is used for singular nouns that are placed closer.
For e.g.: This is a pen
 └───┘
 Singular Noun
- 'These' is used for plural pronouns that are placed for near.
For e.g.: This is a pen
 └───┘
 Singular Noun

3. 'That' is used to demonstrate singular nouns that are placed for.
For Ex - That is a pen.
4. 'Those' is used to demonstrate Plural Nouns that are placed far.
For Ex - Those are pens.
5. 'One' and 'Ones' are used as substitutes for nouns.
For Ex - I have lost my book, but I have got one (book) from my friend.
6. 'Such' is also used as a substitute for a Noun.
For Ex - I am a teacher. And as such(a teacher)I should be unbiased.

V. RELATIVE PRONOUN:

A Relative Pronoun is one which relates a clause or phrase to a noun or a pronoun.

For Ex - Who, which, that, etc.

Uses of Relative Pronoun:

1. 'Who' and 'Whom' are used for humans in subjective and objective cases respectively.
For Ex - She is the girl who teaches English.
They are the students who she teach.
2. Which is used for all except humans.
For Ex - This is the car which I bought.
3. Whose is used in Possessive case.
For Ex - These are the children whose father has died.
4. If a human and a non living thing/ animal are joined by 'and', then a relative pronoun 'that' is used.
For Ex - The girls and her dog that I saw least Sunday have
5. After a superlative degree, 'That' is used
For Ex - She is the most beautiful girl 'that' I have ever seen.
6. Words like Everything, nothing, anything, the only, the few, the little, the same etc are used with 'that'.
For Ex - I gave him the few pens that I had got.
She is the same girl that helped me.

VI. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

Interrogative Pronouns are used for asking question.

For Ex - Who, which, what, etc.

Uses of Interrogative Pronouns.

1. Who is used to ask about the subject.
For Ex - who is she?
2. Whom is used to ask about the object.
For Ex - Whom have you called?
3. Whose is used to ask about the possession of something.
For Ex - Whose car is that?
Note: 'Whose' is not used for non living things.
For Ex. - This is the pen whose cap was lost. (Wrong)
This is the pen, the cap of which was lost. (Correct)
4. Which is used for both persons and things if a choice is to be made between two or more.
For Ex - 'Which' of the two cars is yours?
5. Where, why and when are used as interrogative pronouns for place, reason and time respectively.
For Ex - where is your book? (Place)
Why are you sad? (Reason)
When will you come here? (Time)

VII. RECIPROCAL PRONOUN

Pronouns that indicate a mutual relationship are called Reciprocal Pronouns. Each other and One another are the two Reciprocal Pronoun.

Uses of Reciprocal Pronoun

1. Each other is used to denote a relationship between two subjects.
For Ex - Meenakshi and her sister love each other.
2. One another is used to denote a relationship among more than two subjects.
For Ex - All the team members support one another.

VIII. UNIVERSAL PRONOUN

Anybody, Somebody, nobody, someone, all, both, some, many, etc are called Universal Pronouns.

Uses of Universal Pronoun

1. Anybody, Somebody, nobody, everybody, etc. denote singular nouns.
For Ex - Somebody has arrived to help him.
Everybody loves this movie.
2. All, both, Some, many etc. denote plural nouns.
For Ex - Many are required.
All have done their job.

XI. DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUN

Pronouns which separate a person or thing from a group of persons or things are called Distributive Pronouns.

For Ex - Either of, Neither of, each of, everyone of, Any of, one of, etc.

Uses of Distributive Pronoun:

1. Either of and Neither of are used to denote choice between two persons or thing.
For Ex - Either of these two men is our new teacher.
Neither of these two pens is mine.
2. 'Any of' or 'One of' is used to denote choice among many persons or things.
For Ex - One of these books is mine.
Note: 'None of' is negative of 'one of' and means 'not one of more than two'
For Ex - None of (not one of) the boys has come.
Note: Distributive Pronouns agree with singular verbs.

X. INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

Indefinite Pronouns are those that are used in general sense and have no definite relationship with a noun. Some of the examples of indefinite pronouns are:

'One', 'none', 'all', 'many', 'both', etc.

Uses of Indefinite Pronouns

1. Any and All are used both in Singular and Plural numbers.
For Ex - All that glitters is not gold. (Singular)
All of us have cleared the exam (Plural)
2. Both, Some, Many and Few are used as Plural.
For Ex - Both of them are coming.
Some of my classmates have cleared the test.
Note: If 'One has been used in Nominative Case, then we should use 'one' in accusative case as well.
For Ex - One should respect his teachers. (Wrong)
One should respect one's teachers. (Correct)

Exercise

Directions: Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical error in it. The error, if any, will be in one part of the sentence. The number of that part is the answer. If there is no error, the answer is '4' i.e. No error, (Ignore the errors of punctuation, if any).

1. Each one of us goes to (a)/purchase items for (b)/ our own use. (c)/No error (d)
2. He was the man whom (a)/they thought. (b)/ should be the next mayor. (c)/No error (d)
3. His salary (a)/is lower (b)/than a caretaker. (c)/No error (d)
4. If you absent from (a)/college your name likely (b)/to be struck off the rolls. (c)/ No error (d)
5. One should make (a)/his best efforts if (b)/one wishes to achieve success in this organization. (c)/No error (d)
6. The principal decide to (a)/sanction any money that was required for (b)/ completing the project. (c)/ No error (d)
7. A woman came in (a)/with a baby whom she said (b)/ had just swallowed a safety pin. (c)/No error (d)
8. Neither he nor his brother (a)/was informed about the venue of the (b)/ meeting of our society. (c)/No error (d)
9. After every participant had had (a)/three minutes to express their opinion (b)/the debate thrown open to the audience. (c)/No error (d)
10. Sanjay is one of the latest (a)/additions to good drama (b)/ who appeared in recent times. (c)/No error (d)
11. One of his greatest contributions (a)/to social reform was their movement for (b)/ eradication of child marriages. (c)/No error (d)
12. He is the man (a)/who I know helped my son (b)/ in the final examination. (c)/No error (d)
13. He looks at everything (a)/from their (b)/ best side. (c)/No error (d)
14. Everyone of the men present here (a)/has given a day's pay (b)/as their contribution to the fund. (c)/No error (d)
15. The clerk whom (a)/spoke rudely to (b)/the customer yesterday has been suspended. (c)/No error (d)
16. This is one of the few companies (a)/who have done (b)/ well for the past two years. (c)/No error (d)
17. Out of the six companies (a)/shortlisted for the project (b)/five have already made its presentation. (c)/ No error (d)
18. India's GDP is most likely to grow (a)/at six per cent higher than (b)/ those of the U.S. (c)/No error (d)
19. Ashok is among the few people in the world (a)/which did not blindly follow (b)/their sharp decline in purchasing power. (c)/No error (d)
20. He is a university professor (a)/but of his three sons (b)/neither has any merit. (c)/ No error(d)
21. You, (a)/ I and he (b)/ should take this threat seriously. (c)/ No error (d)
22. When warned (a)/ he stopped (b)/himself at once. (c)/No error (d)
23. They did not go to attend (a)/ the marriage of their (b)/neighbours' daughter, didn't they? (c)/ No error (d)
24. All (a)/ which glitters (b)/ is not gold. (c)/ No error (d)
25. She bought two bags (a)/ of sweets and gave (b)/ it to the children. (c)/ No error (d)

26. The cause of pollution is (a)/ man himself and (b)/ their inventions. (c)/ No error (d)
27. A student must study hard (a)/ to maintain their marks (b)/ throughout the year. (c)/ No error (d)
28. My friends and I (a)/ went for a holiday in Hawaii (b)/ and really enjoyed himself. (c)/ No error (d)
29. I could see three cows (a)/ sitting in a nearby field (b)/ having its afternoon rest. (c)/ No error (d)
30. Rohini was an excellent student (a)/ but she always suffered terrible nerves (b)/ before doing his exams. (c)/ No error (d)
31. I, you and he (a) / must attend (b) / the seminar (c) / on career guidance. No error (d)
32. The Party Chief (a) / and the Chief Minister (b) / expressed his views (c) / on demonetization in India. No error (d)
33. Mr. Budhraj, (a) / my friend and professor, (b) / is known for (c) / their good behavior. (d)
34. The manager (a) / as well as (b) / the clerks (c) / absented themselves yesterday. (d)
35. Every boy and (a) / every girl (b) / will do his best (c) / to pass the exam. No error (d)
36. Neither the students (a) / nor the teacher (b) / was in their (c) / class. No error (d)
37. There is (a) / none who (b) / can help you (c) / in this crucial time. No error (d)
38. He introduced to (a) / the Chairman as (b)/ the Host of the (c) / event. No error (d)
39. Many a (a) / warrior has met (b) / their death (c) / in the battlefield. No error (d)
40. None of these (a) / two officers (b) / has been looking after (c) / his department well. No error(d)
41. His elder (a) / brother is (b) / more intelligent than him. (c) No error(d)
42. The Manager ordered the (a) / watchman to (b) / let the boys and I go in. (c) No error(d)
43. Between(a) / you and I, the secretary(b) / is not a gentleman. (c)/ No error (d)
44. One should (a) / do your duty(b) / honestly and sincerely. (c) /No error (d)
45. Good students(a)/ like you and he(b)/ should study regularly. (c)/ No error (d)
46. You, he and I(a)/ are (b) /in the wrong. (c)/ No error (d)
47. Only (a) / you and him(b)/ can do this work fast. (c)/ No error (d)
48. If I were him, (a)/ I would not misbehave (b)/ like this. (c) / No error(d)
49. Everyone announced (a)/ one's plans in(b)/ the presence of the President(c)/ No error(d)
50. She helped everyone (a) / of those boys(b)/ in doing their work. (c)/ No error (d)
51. Every(a) / teacher and every student (b) / should do their duty. (c)/ No error (d)
52. Neither of the boys (a)/ has (b)/ submitted their records. (c)/ No Error (d).
53. She availed of (a)/ the(b)/ opportunity. (c)/ No error (d)
54. Those two (a)/ companies always (b)/ help one another. (c)/ No error (d)
55. India and Pakistan (a)/ should cooperate with(b)/ one another in this matter. (c)/ No error(d)
56. Dear students, (a) / enjoy(b)/ during the holidays. (c)/ No error (d)
57. The committee were (a)/divided in its opinion (b)/ regarding this issue. (c) / No error (d)
58. My brother (a)/ fell off his (b)/ bicycle and hurt him. (c) No error (d)
59. We studied hard (a)/ for two hours, (b)/so we gave us a twenty-minute break. (c)/ No error (d)
60. My arm is (a)/broken, so it's not (b)/easy for me to dress me. (c)/ No error (d)

Solutions

1. (c); Use 'his own use' in place of 'our own use' because in the given sentence, 'each' is the subject. Possessive 'his' is used with 'each'.
 Each of you/them/us has completed their work. (x)
 Each of you/them/us has completed our work. (x)
 Each of you/them/us has completed his work. (✓)
2. (a); Use 'who' in place of 'whom'.
3. (c); In the given sentence comparison is made between the salaries of two persons. So "that of a caretaker" should replace 'a caretaker'.
Example-
 The road of Ranchi is wider than Patna. (x)
 The road of Ranchi is wider than that of Patna. (✓)
4. (a); Use 'If you absent yourself from' in place of 'If you absent from'. 'Reflexive Pronoun' is used with verb 'absent'.
Example-
 Babita deliberately absent from the meeting. (x)
 Babita deliberately absented herself from the meeting. (✓)
5. (b); Use 'one's best effort if' in place of 'his best efforts if'. Possessive case of 'one' is 'one's'.
Example-
 One should do his duty. (x)
 One should do one's duty. (✓)
6. (b); Use 'sanction some money' in place of 'sanction any money' because 'some' is used in affirmative sentences and 'any' is used in negative and interrogative sentences.
Example-
 I have some books to read. (✓)
 I have not some books to read. (x)
 I have not any book to read. (✓)
7. (b); Use 'who she said' in place of 'whom she said'.
8. (d); No error.
9. (b); Use 'his' in place of 'their'.
10. (c); Use 'which' in place of 'who'.
11. (b); Use 'his movement' in place of 'their movement'.
12. (d); No error.
13. (b); Use 'his' in place of 'their'.
14. (c); Use 'his contribution' in place of 'their contribution'.
15. (a); Use 'who' in place of 'whom'.
16. (b); Use 'that' in place of 'who'.
17. (c); Use 'their' in place of 'its'.
18. (c); Use 'that' in place of 'those'.
19. (b); Use 'who' in place of 'which'.

20. (c); Use 'none' in place of 'neither'.
21. (b); Use 'You, he and I' in place of 'you, I and he'.
22. (c); Remove 'himself'.
23. (c); Use 'did they?' in place of 'didn't they?'.
24. (b); Use 'that' in place of 'which'.
25. (c); Use 'them' in place of 'it'.
26. (c); Use 'his' in place of 'their'.
27. (b); Use 'his' in place of 'their'.
28. (c); Use 'ourselves' in place of 'himself'.
29. (c); Use 'their' in place of 'its'.
30. (c); Use 'her' in place of 'his'.
31. (a); The correct order should be 'You, he and I'.
32. (c); Replace 'his' with 'their'.
33. (d); Replace 'their' with 'his'.
34. (d); Replace 'themselves' with 'himself'.
35. (c); Replace 'his' with 'her'.
36. (c); Replace 'their' with 'his'.
37. (b); Replace 'who' with 'that'.
38. (a); Add 'himself' after 'introduced'.
39. (c); Replace 'their' with 'his'.
40. (a); Replace 'none' by 'neither'.
41. (c); Replace 'him' with 'he'. In case of pronoun coming after 'than', it must be in the same case as that coming before 'than'.
42. (c); Replace 'I' with 'me'.
43. (b); you and me
44. (b); do one's duty
45. (b); You and me
46. (a); I, you and me
47. (b); Only you and he
48. (a); If I were he
49. (b); his plans in
50. (c); is doing his work.
51. (c); his or her duty.
52. (c); his record.
53. (a); he availed herself of
54. (c); each other.
55. (c); Each other
56. (c); Enjoy yourselves.
57. (b); in their opinion.
58. (c); Replace him with himself
59. (c); Replace us with ourselves
60. (c); Replace me with myself.

Adjectives

For Ex- Rishabh is a dull boy.

TYPES OF ADJECTIVES:

1. Adjective of quality
2. Adjective of quantity
3. Adjective of number
4. Proper Adjective
5. Demonstrative Adjective
6. Distributive Adjective
7. Interrogative Adjective
8. Possessive Adjective
9. Emphasizing Adjective
10. Relative Adjective
11. Exclamatory Adjective

- 1. Adjective of quality:** Adjectives of quality show the quality and kind of a person or thing.

Rajasthan is a large city

(1) An adjective can be used before a noun. (attributive use)

For Ex - Ashok was a great king
adj. Noun

In the above example, adjective (great) has been used attributively.

(i) An adjective can also be used after a verb, (Predicative use)

For Ex - Ravi is smart
verb adjective

In the above example, adjective (smart) has been used predicatively.

Note: Some adjectives like sleep, awake, afraid, ashamed, alike, alone etc. are used only predicatively.

For Ex - Ram is afraid.

Sita and Gita are alike.

2. **Adjective of quantity:** Adjectives of quantity are used to denote the quantity of nouns or pronouns

For Ex - Some, all, any, enough, much etc.

For Ex - Give him some milk.

Enough oil is there in the urn.

Uses of adjectives of quantity.

1. Some is used in affirmative sentences before uncountable nouns.

For Ex - I have some oil.

2. Any is used in negative sentences before plural countable nouns
For Ex: I don't have any books.

For Ex - He does not have any problems.

3. Many is used for countable nouns whereas much is used for uncountable nouns.
For Ex - I have many works to do (countable)

For Ex - I have many works to do (wrong)

I have much work to do (correct)

I have many pens (correct)

3. **Adjective of number:** Adjective that shows the number of nouns or pronouns is called adjective of number. Adjective of number is of two types:

- (i) Definite (ii) Indefinite

(i) **Definite Numerals:** These are used to denote an exact number.

For Ex - One car, second boy, first row, etc.

They can again be divided into two parts.

(a) **Ordinals:** Definite Adjectives which show the order in which a person or thing stands are called ordinal adjectives

For Ex - The first boy of this row is Raj.

August is the eighth month of the year.

(b) **Cardinals:** Definite Adjectives which show the number of nouns are called cardinal adjectives

For Ex - I have seven pens

Shashank has three sisters

(ii) **Indefinite Adjectives:** Adjectives that do not denote an exact number or order are called Indefinite Adjectives.

For Ex - Few girls have come.

He has several books.

4. **Proper Adjective:** Adjectives which are formed from proper nouns are called proper Adjectives

For Ex - Gandhian Philosophy

Indian Economy

5. **Demonstrative Adjective:** Adjectives which point out which person or thing is being talked about are called demonstrative adjectives.

For Ex - That pen is yours.

This boy is fatter than you.

These teams have qualified for the finals

Those trees are quite tall.

Note: When demonstrative words like this, that, these or those precede a noun, they are known as demonstrative adjectives" whereas if these words are followed by a verb, they are called 'demonstrative pronouns'.

For Ex -

This is my Book
Demonstrative Pronoun Verb

This book is mine
Demonstrative Noun Adjective

Note: The number of a demonstrative adjective and the noun qualified by it must be same.

For Ex - These kind of Necklace is expensive (wrong)

This kind of Necklace is expensive (correct)

6. **Distributive Adjective:** Distributive Adjectives are those adjectives which are used to refer to members of a group as individuals.

For Ex - Each student has passed.

Every boy was present yesterday.

Note: Each, every, either or neither can be used both as an adjective (when placed before a noun) and as a pronoun (when followed by some other word)

For Ex - Each boy has come

Distributive Noun

Adjective

Each of the boys has come.

Distributive

Pronoun.

7. **Interrogative Adjective:** When Interrogative Pronouns (what/which/whose) are followed by a noun then they are said to be Interrogative Adjectives.
For Ex - What kind of man are you?
Which car is yours?
8. **Possessive Adjective:** Adjectives formed from possessive pronoun are called Possessive Adjective.
For Ex - My book has been lost
Your father is coming.
9. **Emphasizing Adjective:** Adjectives which are used to emphasize a noun are called Emphasizing Adjectives.
For Ex - I cooked it with my own hands.
Emphasizing adjective
10. **Relative Adjectives:** When Relative Pronouns which and what are used as adjectives, they are called relative adjectives.
For Ex - He was injured, which fact
11. **Exclamatory Adjective:** Sometimes 'what' is used in exclamatory sentences, such type of usage is 'what' an exclamatory adjective.
For Ex - What a beautiful painting!
What an idea!
- Formation Of Adjectives.**
- (i) Many adjectives are formed from Nouns.

Noun	Adjective	Noun	Adjective
Gold	Golden	Silk	Silken
Gift	Gifted	King	Kingly
Boy	Boyish	Dirt	Dirty
Fool	Foolish	Storm	Stormy
Care	Careful	Pardon	Pardonable
Play	Playful	Laugh	Laughable
Hope	Hopeful	Venture	Venturesome
Trouble	Troublesome	Outrage	Outrageous
Courage	Courageous	Glory	Glorious
Envy	Envious	Man	Manly
Shame	Shameless/Shameful		

- (ii) Some adjectives are formed from Verbs.

Verb	Adjective	Verb	Adjective
Cease	Ceaseless	Talk	Talkative
Tire	Tireless	Move	Moveable

- (iii) Some adjectives are formed from other Adjectives.

Adjective	Adjective	Adjective	Adjective
White	Whitish	Black	Blackish
Sick	Sickly	Tragic	Tragical
Whole	Wholesome	Three	Threefold

Look at the following sentences

(i) Ravi is a tall boy

(iii) Ravi is the tallest boy of his class.

(ii) Ravi is taller than Rakesh

In the first sentence, 'tall' denotes the quality of Ravi and is therefore an adjective in "positive degree".

In the second sentence, 'taller' denotes the comparison of a quality of Ravi with that of Rakesh and is therefore an adjective in 'comparative degree'.

And, in the third sentence, 'tallest' denotes the highest degree of quality and is therefore an adjective in 'Superlative Degree'.

Hence, adjectives have three types of degree:

1. Positive Degree (when no comparison is made)
2. Comparative Degree (when two things or set of things are compared)
3. Superlative Degree (To denote the highest degree of quality)

Ways To Change Positive In To Comparative And Superlative Degree

Rule 1: To change an adjective into comparative degree 'er' is added to the positive degree and 'est' is added to change it into superlative degree.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Bold	Bolder	Boldest
Deep	Deeper	Deepest
High	Higher	Highest
Strong	Stronger	Strongest
Thick	Thicker	Thickest
Weak	Weaker	Weakest

Rule 2: If 'e' is present at the end of a positive degree, 'r' is added to change it into a comparative degree and 'st' to change it into superlative degree.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Able	Abler	Ablest
Brave	Braver	Bravest
Fine	Finer	Finest
Noble	Nobler	Noblest
True	Truer	Truest
Wise	Wiser	Wisest

Rule 3: If the positive degree ends in a consonant and a short vowel comes before it, the last consonant is doubled and then 'er' and 'est' are added to change it into comparative and superlative degree respectively.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Big	Bigger	Biggest
Fit	Fitter	Fittest
Hot	Hotter	Hottest
Sad	Sadder	Saddest
Thin	Thinner	Thinnest
Wet	Wetter	Wettest

Rule 4: When a positive degree ends in 'y' and a consonant is present before 'y', the 'y' is converted into 'i', and then 'er' and 'est' are added respectively.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Dry	Drier	Driest
Happy	Happier	Happiest
Heavy	Heavier	Heaviest
Pretty	Prettier	Prettiest

Note: If a vowel is present before 'y', only 'er' and 'est' should be added.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Grey	Greyer	Greyest

Rule 5: Adjectives that are of more than two syllables, are changed to comparative and superlative degree by adding more and most respectively.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Beautiful	more beautiful	most beautiful
Courageous	more courageous	most courageous
Intelligent	more intelligent	most intelligent
Pleasant	more pleasant	most pleasant

Note: Certain adjectives do not follow any rule. They get changed completely.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Good/well	better	best
Bad/ill	worse	worst
Little	less/lesser	least
Fore	former	foremost/first
Late	later/latter	last/latest
Far	farther	farthest
Near	nearer	nearest/next
Old	older/elder	oldest/eldest
Much/many	more	most

Correct Usage of Adjectives:

1. Positive degree of adjective is used in between 'as as' and 'so as'

For Ex - She is as fair as her sister.

He played as good as he could.

2. When one is to be chosen out of two, we use a comparative degree followed by 'of' and preceded by 'the'. But, when one is to be chosen out of more than two, superlative degree is used with 'of' placed immediately after and 'the' placed immediately before the superlative degree.

For Ex - She is the prettiest of two sisters (wrong)

She is the prettier of two sisters (correct)

(Comparative degree
for two)

He is the strongest of all the wrestlers

3. Following structure must be followed when two qualities of a noun are being compared.

'Sub + verb + more + positive degree + than + positive degree'

For Ex - He is taller than falter (wrong)

He is more tall than fat. (correct)

4. Some comparative adjectives are followed by 'to' and not 'than'. Some of them are Superior, inferior, senior, junior, prior, anterior, posterior, preferable etc."

For Ex - He is junior to me.

Tea is more preferable to coffee.

5. If two adjectives are joined by a conjunction, they should be in same degree.

For Ex - My house is bigger and better than yours

Ashish is the richest and kindest person of this town.

6. Hyphenated adjectives are never used in plural form.
For Ex - I gave him three ten-rupees notes. (wrong)
I gave him three ten - rupee notes. (correct)
7. Possessive adjectives must be placed after 'All' and 'Both' and not before them.
For Ex - Both his brothers have failed
All my friends have reached there.
8. To compare one with all the others of same quality, 'any other' (for singular) and 'all others' (for plurals) are used.
For Ex - She is more intelligent than any other student in the class
She is more intelligent than all other students in the class.
9. Both 'as as' and 'then' are used when we use positive and comparative degree of an adjective together.
For Ex - She is as good as if not better than you.
10. Some adjectives are not used in comparative or superlative degree. Some of those adjectives are 'interior', 'exterior', 'complete', 'perfect', 'final', 'last', 'unique', 'absolute', 'impossible', 'supreme', etc.
For Ex - This is more superior than that (wrong)
This is superior than that (correct)
11. Some adjective are never used in comparative degree. They are always used in only positive and superlative degree.

POSITIVE

Northern

Top

Eastern

SUPERLATIVE

Northernmost

Topmost

Easternmost.

12 Some Confusing Adjectives:

- (i) **Farther and further:** Farther means 'at, to, or by a greater distance'.
It's used as comparative of far.

For Ex - My house is at the farther end of the street.

Further means 'additional'.

For Ex - For further information contact, contact me.

- (ii) **last and Latest:** Last means "after all others in time or order".
It refers to position.

For Ex - Lord Mountbatten was the last viceroy of India

Latest means 'of recent date'. It refers to time.

For Ex - I bought the latest mobile phone.

- (iii) **Elder (Eldest)/older (oldest):** Elder (Eldest) means 'of earlier birth'. It is used only for persons and is confined to members of the same family.

For Ex - Ramesh is my elder brother

Older (oldest) means 'advanced in years'. It can be used for both persons and things.

For Ex - Shivam is older than tina

Hinduism is the oldest religion of the world.

- (iv) **Nearest and Next:** 'Nearest' means 'not far distant in time or space, or degree or circumstances.' It denotes distance.

For Ex - Which is the nearest shopping mall?

'Next' means 'immediately following in time or 'order'. It denotes position.

For Ex - ViratKohli will be the next captain of Indian Cricket Team.

- (v) **Later and Latter:** Later means 'at a subsequent time or stage'.

For Ex - She will ask him 'later'.

Latter means 'second of the two things or persons'

For Ex - The latter innings of the ODI was quite interesting.

Note: 'Farmer' is opposite of letter.

- (vi) **Fewer and Less:** Both fewer and less means 'of small quantity or numbers'.

But, fewer is used for countable nouns

while less is used for uncountable nouns.

For Ex - No fewer than 20 people died in the plain crash.

No less than half of the work has been completed.

- (vii) **Little / a little / the little:** 'Little' means 'limited or below average (hardly any)'

It has a negative meaning.

For Ex - There is little hope of his survival.

'A little' means 'somewhat (though not much)'

It has a positive meaning. It is used in context of 'some'.

For Ex - A little awareness would have saved his life.

'The little' means 'not much but all of that much available'

For Ex - He drank off the little water he had.

Note: 'Few/a few/the few' and 'little/a little/the little' have same meaning. The only difference being that 'little/a little/the little' are used for uncountable nouns, while 'few/a few/the few' are used for countable noun.

For Ex - Few hardly any students have attended the class today.

A few (some) members are absent.

The few (Not many, but all there are)

Friends he had were all very helpful.

Note: Few is used with plural nouns.

13. If adjective of shape, size, colour, origin etc. come together in a single sentence, then the order of adjective should be as follows.

Opinion>Size>Age>Shape>Colour>Origin>Material>Purpose

For Ex - I bought a big black leather bag for the summer camp. Size colour Material.

Exercise

Directions: Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical error in it. The error, if any, will be in one part of the sentence. The number of that part is the answer. If there is no error, the answer is '4' i.e. No error, (Ignore the errors of punctuation, if any).

1. No station on this sector of the railway (a)/is as modern and clean (b)/as this station is (c)/No error (d)
2. After he had read the two first chapters (a)/of the novel he felt like reading (b)/the novel at one sitting (c)/No error (d)
3. Enough is enough I cannot now (a)/tolerate this mischief (b)/any much. (c)/No error (d)
4. The girls sang few songs (a)/to entertain the guests (b)/but the guests were not pleased. (c)/No error (d)
5. No book is as absorbing as (a)/the novel I am reading (b)/written by Premchand. (c)/No error (d)
6. Of all the teachers in our school, (a)/our history teacher (b)/is the better. (c)/No error (d)

7. I always prefer working in a (a)/released atmosphere than one (b)/full of tension and anxiety. (c)/No error (d)
8. Manjeet said that he preferred a white shirt (a)/than a coloured one (b)/on any festive occasion. (c)/No error (d)
9. No variety of mango (a)/produced in our country (b)/is as tasty as this variety. (c)/No error (d)
10. Amrita was so overburden by office work (a)/that she felt tired (b)/at the end of the day. (c)/No error (d)
11. There were no (a)/ less than fifty persons (b)/ in the dining hall. (c)/ No error (d)
12. Few remarks that (a)/ he made were offensive (b)/ to my brother. (c)/ No error (d)
13. It is a worth seeing movie (a)/ and you must (b)/ not miss it. (c)/ No error (d)
14. Of all the students Rita was less worried (a)/ when the date for the annual examination (b)/ was announced. (c)/ No error (d)
15. Even the most perfect person (a)/ in the world is said to have erred (b)/ when there was time to act. (c)/ No error (d)
16. I was surprised to see every (a)/ student sitting quietly in the class, even though (b)/ the teacher was not present. (c)/ No error (d)
17. Whole India expressed anger (a)/ over the hijacking of Air India Boeing Jet (b)/ by militant at Karachi. (c)/ No error (d)
18. I like him because (a)/ he is the more interesting fellow (b)/ because of his amiable nature. (c)/ No error (d)
19. The meeting was postponed (a)/ because only the few (b)/ persons were present there. (c)/ No error (d)
20. In the opinion of (a)/ everyone she is wiser (b)/ than beautiful. (c)/ No error (d)
21. He is as intelligent (a)/ if not more intelligent (b)/ than his brother. (c)/ No error (d)
22. She is better than (a)/ any girl that studies (b)/ in our class. (c)/ No error (d)
23. The latest chapter of this novel (a)/ is the most comprehensive of all (b)/ the chapters in the book. (c)/ No error (d)
24. She was not punished (a)/ though she came (b)/ latter than I. (c)/ No error (d)
25. She is the best (a)/ and beautiful girl (b)/ of our village. (c)/ No error (d)
26. My book is superior (a)/ than yours although it (b)/ has cost me much less. (c)/ No error (d)
27. Of all other my neighbours (a)/ he is the kindest and (b)/ most considerate to others. (c)/ No error (d)
28. 'Arabian Nights' is the most (a)/ adventurous of any books (b)/ written so far. (c)/ No error (d)
29. The works of Shakespeare (a)/ are more famous than any (b)/ other English dramatist. (c)/ No error (d)
30. It is all the more (a)/ better if you work (b)/ in my company. (c)/ No error (d)
31. There were only two (a) / commandos but each and every (b) / commando was equal (c) / to six policemen. No error (d)
32. She ordered (a) / certain girl to (b) / make entry into (c) / the Manager's office. No error(d)
33. Everybody knows that (a) / Sonu Nigam is (b) / the most unique singer (c) / of this industry. No error(d)
34. Chennai is (a) / further from (b) / Pune than (c) / Nagpur. No error(d)

35. You can (a) / see this channel (b) / for the last news (c) / of this week. No error(d)
36. It is a fact that (a) / John F. Kennedy was (b) / the first politician (c) / of his time. No error (d)
37. No less than (a) / hundred audiences are sitting (b) / in the hall (c) / and waiting for the final performance. No error(d)
38. In spite of facing (a) / much problems (b) / he did not (c) / falter from his path. No error(d)
39. Whole the chapter (a) / of the book (b) / is full of (c) / printing errors. No error (d)
40. This candy is (a) / preferable than (b) / that and (c) / its taste is also comparatively good. No error
41. Her mother told him (a) / that it would be more better (b) / if he would do his (c) / work him
No error (d)
42. This is the (a) / more difficult uestion (b) / I have ever solved (c) / within ten minutes. No error
43. All the paintings (a) / are interesting (b) / but this one is the more interesting. (c)/ No error(d)
44. He does not have (a) / some money (b) / to buy a new (c) / printing machine. No error(d)
45. Of the billions of (a)/c stars in the galaxy, (b)/how much are (c)/ suitable for life? No error(d)
46. He feels his (a)/troubles (b)/ as much or (c)/ even more than they. / No error (d)
47. There is not many traffic (a)/ along the street (b)/ where I live. (c) / No error (d)
48. Of the two great cities (a)/the former is (b)/biggest. (c) /No error (d)
49. The number of applications has risen (a)/this year by (b)/as many as 50%. (c)/No error(d)
50. Can you tell me how (a)/many eggs and (b)/milk he has brought? (c)/ No error (d)
51. Her black long (a)/hair adds (b)/glamour to her looks. (c)/ No error (d)
52. Mumbai is (a)/further from (b)/ Delhi than (c)/ Patna. No error (d)
53. He does not have (a)/ some money to buy a new machine so he is (b)/ anxious. (c)/ No error (c)
54. He is comparatively (a)/ weaker (b)/in maths. (c)/ no error (d)
55. My all (a)/ friends will come (b)/ tomorrow to meet me. (c)/ no error(d)
56. He ran so fastly (a)/ that he reached (b)/ the destination in just two minutes. (c)/No error(d)
57. To me it appears that (a)/ Anthropology is the more interesting (b)/ of all the subjects. (c)/ No error(d)
58. In his old age, (a)/ a person is likely to get (b)/ more weak day by day. (c)/ No error (d)
59. I am more lonelier (a)/ here than (b)/ I was in the USA. (c)/ No error. (d)
60. In the garden (a)/ were the more beautiful flowers (b)/ and silver bells. (c)/ No error (d)

Solutions

1. (a) Use 'No other station on' in place of 'No station on'.
 No student of this coaching is as good as Manjeet. (x)
 No other student of this coaching is as good as Manjeet. (✓)
 No other player of the Indian cricket team is as famous as Ganguly. (x)
 No other player of the Indian cricket team is as famous as Ganguly. (✓)
2. (a) Use 'The first two chapters' in place of 'The two first chapters'. When cardinal adjective and Ordinal Adjective are used together, Ordinal Adjective (first, second, third, next, last etc.) is used before Cardinal Adjective.

Example-

He has finished the three first chapters of this book. (x)
 He has finished the first three chapters of this book. (✓)

3. (c) Use 'any more' in place of 'any much'. 'any' is used with comparative degree adjective.
 Is his friend any good? (x)
 Is his friend any better? (✓)
4. (a) Use 'a few songs' in place of 'few songs'.
5. (a) Use 'No other book' in place of 'No book'.
6. (c) Use 'is the best' in place of 'is the better'.
7. (b) Use 'to' in place of 'than'.
8. (b) Use 'to a coloured one' in place of 'than a coloured one'. Prefer/Preferable take preposition 'to'.
9. (a) Use 'No other variety of mangoes' in place of 'No variety of mangoes'.
 No other + SCN + Verb + So/as + 'Positive Degree Adjective' + as + S

Example-

No leader in the R.J.D. is so as famous and powerful as Mr. Laloo Prasad. (x)
No other leader in the R.J.D. is so as famous and powerful as Mr. Laloo Prasad. (✓)

10. (a) Use 'overburdened' in place of 'overburden' because overburdened is an adjective and 'overburden' is a verb.
 She is so **beauty** that everyone likes to talk to her. (x)
 She is so **beautiful** that everyone likes to talk to her. (✓)
 He is **please** with me. (x)
 He is **pleased** with me. (✓)
11. (b) Use 'fewer' in place of 'less'.
12. (a) Use 'The few' in place of 'Few'.
13. (a) Use 'movie worth seeing' in place of 'worth seeing movie'.
14. (a) Use 'the least' in place of 'less'.
15. (a) Remove 'most'.
16. (b) Use 'quiet' in place of 'quietly'.
17. (a) Add 'the' before 'whole'.
18. (b) Use 'the most' in place of 'the more'.
19. (b) Remove 'the' before 'few'.

20. (b) Use 'more wise' in place of 'wiser'.
21. (a) Add 'as' after 'intelligent'.
22. (b) Add 'other' after 'any'.
23. (a) Use 'the last' in place of 'latest'.
24. (c) Use 'later' in place of 'latter'.
25. (b) Add 'the most' before 'beautiful'.
26. (b) Use 'to' in place of 'than'.
27. (a) Remove 'other' before 'my neighbours'.
28. (b) Use 'all' in place of 'any'.
29. (b) Add 'those of' after 'than'.
30. (a) Remove 'all the more' before 'better'.
31. (b) Replace 'each and every' with 'each'.
32. (b) Replace 'certain' with 'a certain'.
33. (c) Replace 'the most' with 'a'.
34. (b) Replace 'further' with 'farther'.
35. (c) Replace 'last' with 'latest'.
36. (c) Replace 'first' with 'foremost'.
37. (a) Replace 'less' with 'fewer'.
38. (b) Replace 'much' with 'many'.
39. (a) Replace 'whole the' with 'the whole'.
40. (b) Replace 'than' with 'to'.
41. (b) Remove 'more'.
42. (b) Replace 'more' with 'most'.
43. (c) Replace 'more' with 'most'.
44. (b) Replace 'some' with 'any'.
45. (c) Replace 'much' with 'many'.
46. (b) It should be as much as
47. (a) Replace 'many' with 'much'.
48. (c) Replace 'biggest' with 'bigger'.
49. (c) It should be 'as much as'.
50. (b) Replace 'many' with 'much'.
51. (a) Her long black adjective of size comes first before the adjective of colors.
52. (b) Replace 'further' with 'farther'.
53. (b) Replace 'some' with 'any'.
54. (b) Replace 'weaker' with 'weak'.
55. (a) Use My all instead of All my.
56. (a) Replace 'Fastly' with 'fast'.
57. (b) Replace 'more' with 'most'.
58. (c) Replace 'weak' with 'weaker'.
59. (a) Remove 'lonelier'.
60. (b) Replace 'more' with 'most'.

Verb

Verbs have traditionally been defined as "action" words or "doing" words. The verb in the following sentence is *rides*:

Paul *rides* a bicycle

Here, the verb *rides* certainly denotes an action which Paul performs - the action of riding a bicycle. However, there are many verbs which do not denote an action at all. For example, in *Paul seems unhappy*, we cannot say that the verb *seems* denotes an action. We would hardly say that Paul is performing any action when he seems unhappy. So the notion of verbs as "action" words is somewhat limited.

KINDS OF VERBS:

1. Finite verbs 2. Non-finite verbs
3. Transitive verbs 4. Intransitive verbs

1. Finite Verbs: Finite Verbs are those verbs that have a definite relation with the subject or noun. These verbs are usually the main verb of a clause or sentence and can be changed according to the noun. They are used only in present and past tense.

She **walks** home.

- Here we see that the finite verb is **walks** and the pronoun is 'she'.

She **walked** home.

- Here we can see how the verb changed/modified to change the tense of the sentence.

2. Non-finite verbs: These verbs cannot be the main verb of a clause or sentence as they do not talk about the action that is being performed by the subject or noun. They do not indicate any tense, mood or gender. They are used as nouns, adverbs and adjectives. They are also used to form non-finite clauses which are simply dependent clauses that use non-finite verbs.

Non-finite verbs are of the following three types:

- (a) Infinitive (b) Gerund (c) Participle

(a) Infinitive verbs: An infinitive is formed by using the word 'to' before the verb in its stem word. It functions as a noun, adjective or adverb.

Ex - (a) He was made **to clean** his room.

(b) Shalini loves **to talk**.

(b) Gerund verbs: A gerund is formed by adding -ing to a verb. It functions as a noun.

Ex - (a) **Swimming** is very good for the body.

(b) **Smoking** is prohibited in the hospital.

Note: With the following verbs/ adjectives/ phrases 'V₁ +ing' is used after 'to'.

Ex - Verb+ **used to, accustomed to, averse to, with a view to, addicted to, devoted to, in addition to, look forward to, object to, owing to, given to, taken to, prone to.**

Ex - I. He is **addicted to smoking**.

II. I am **looking forward to meeting you**.

In other words, after all the prepositions (including 'to'), if a verb comes, the verb has to be in 'V₁+ing'

Ex - (a) I am **looking forward to meeting you**.

(b) He is **given to drinking**.

(c) He is **prone to making the same mistake again and again**.

(c) **Participle Verb:** A participle is usually formed by adding -ing or -ed to a verb. It functions as an adjective.

Ex - (a) The **singing** bird was the main attraction at the event.

(b) The **injured** man was waiting for the doctor.

3. **Transitive Verb:** If a verb **requires an object** after it, it is called a transitive verb.

I saw the dog.

(the dog - direct object)

Lee ate the pie.

(the pie - direct object)

4. **Intransitive Verb:** An intransitive verb is one that does not take a direct object. In other words, is not done to someone or something. It only involves the subject.

He laughed.

(Laughed is an intransitive verb. It has no direct object.)

He told a joke.

(Told is a transitive verb. The direct object is a joke. You can tell something. You can tell a story, lie, a joke, etc.)

MODALS

A modal (like can, must, should, etc.) is a verb which is used with another verb in order to express an idea such as possibility, responsibility, compulsion, etc.

For Ex - (a) You must come on Wednesday.

(b) You should bring this book tomorrow.

Note: A modal is always followed by the first form of verb.

For Ex - One must obey one's elders.

USE OF MODALS:

1. **Can:** 'Can' is used to denote 'ability'.

For Ex - I can run as fast as you.

'Can' is also used to denote request.

For Ex - Can I use your pen?

Can is also used for giving 'Permission'.

For Ex - You can use my pen.

2. **Could:** 'Could' is used as past participle of can.

For Ex - When she was younger, she could run 10 km and not get without tired.

'Could' can also be used to show possibility.

For Ex - A lot of money could be saved.

3. **May:** 'May' is used to denote possibility.

For Ex - I may come tomorrow.

May is used to denote 'permission'.

For Ex - You may come in.

'May' can also be used for taking permission.

For Ex - May I come in?

- 4. Might:** 'Might' Can be used to denote possibility.
For Ex - He might have reached there by now.
'Might' also denotes 'suggestion'.
For Ex - You might try a little more salt in the curry next time.
- 5. Must:** 'Must' denotes 'Necessity'
For Ex - One must sleep for 8 - 10 hours.
'Must' is also used to denote strong possibility.
For Ex - He looks quite sad, he must have failed.
- 6. Would:** Would is used to refer to future time.
For Ex - I would love to see you tomorrow.
'Would' is also used to denote choice.
For Ex - I would prefer tea to coffee.
'Would' is also used to make a 'request'
For Ex - Would you please lend me 10 rupees.
'Would' is also used to express a 'Wish'
For Ex - I wish, I would succeed in my life.
'Would' is also used to express an 'Opinion'
For Ex - I think he would pass the test.
- 7. Should:** 'Should' is used to denote duty.
For Ex - You should respect your teachers.
'Should' is also used to express an advice
For Ex - You should work hard to pass the exam.
Note: Conjunction 'Lest' is generally followed by 'Should'.
For Ex - Work hard lest you should fail.
- 8. Ought to:** 'Ought to' is used to denote 'moral duty'
For Ex - You ought to help poors
We ought not to disrespect our elders.
- 9. Used to:** 'Used to' is used to denote Something that is done or experienced in the past but is no longer done or experienced.
For Ex - I used to play cricket but now I don't like it.
I did not use to eat egg.
- 10. Dare:** Dare is used to denote challenge or courage :
For Ex - Nobody dares to oppose him.
They dare not ask for any further loan.
- 11. Need:** Need denotes requirements.
For Ex - I need to buy a new house.
You need not take off your blazer.
- 12. Will:** Will is used to talk about the future.
For Ex - Ravi will call you tomorrow.
Will is used to make a request.
For Ex - Will you give me your phone?
- 13. Shall:** Shall is used instead of 'will' when the subject is first person ('I' and 'we').
For Ex - I Shall go to school tomorrow.
Note: In modern English, 'Will' can be used with both 'I' and 'Will' as well.

Exercise

Direction: Find out the error in each of the following sentences, if there is no error, answer is (e).
Avoid punctuation mistakes (if any).

1. (a) He is very / (b) drunk, so he / (c) cannot tell / (d) you his name.
2. (a) A few selfish leaders are / (b) bent to harm the / (c) very foundation / (d) of the democracy.
3. (a) You should avoid / (b) to go to office as you / (c) have severe / (d) eye infection.
4. (a) Everyone considered him as / (b) a brave man / (c) but he fled from / (d) the battlefield.
5. (a) My father does not / (b) mind to be disturbed / (c) while he is reading/ (d) the newspaper.
6. (a) Perhaps you do not know / (b) I am having a car and a jeep / (c) besides a big house/ (d) a good locality.
7. (a) I bade him / (b) to submit all the / (c) important documents / (d) before he left the job.
8. (a) Mrs Dorai would rather / (b) spend a quiet evening / (c) than attending/ (d) a party.
9. (a) The life-guard would not / (b) let the children / (c) to swim at the / (d) deep end of the pool.
10. (a) Walking along the / (b) bank of the river / (c) the road / (d) began to rise. / (e) No error.
11. (a) His assistants have and / (b) are still doing / (c) excellent work/ (d) for the organisation.
12. (a) After the teacher had told the boys / (b) how to pronounce the word / (c) all of them in one voice / (d) repeated the word again.
13. (a) I declined the invitation / (b) not because I did not / (c) want to go, but because / (d) I had no time.
14. (a) Even after sixty years of independence / (b) lakhs of people / (c) do not have / (d) bed and sleep.
15. (a) It being a stormy night, / (b) you must thought of postponing / (c) all your programmes / (d) till tomorrow morning.
16. (a) We would also like to help you / (b) if you intend to execute / (c) such lofty plans for the welfare / (d) of the society.
17. (a) The unreasonable behavior / (b) of his daughter / (c) was thoroughly / (d) upset Mr Gupta./
18. (a) Rajan abided by all / (b) the rules which were / (c) explained to him / (d) before the programme.
19. (a) They did not came/ (b) out victorious, / (c) yet they were not disappointed / (d) rather satisfied because they had played well.
20. (a) He complained to the police / (b) that his briefcase had been stolen / (c) and that was lifted / (d) without any money. 1
21. Walking along the (a)/ bank of the river (b)/ the road began to rise. (c)/ No error (d)
22. It is time you (a)/ decide on your next (b)/course of action. (c)/ No error. (d)
23. As I was feeling sleepy (a)/ I asked for (b)/ a steamed cup of tea. (c)/ No error. (d)
24. I remember (a)/ meet him (b)/ five years ago. (c)/No error. (d)

25. I have always (a)/ and will always (b)/ be faithful to you. (c)/ No error. (d)
26. The company is not doing well (a)/ Isn't it time you (b)/ sell off your shares in it? (c)/ No error (d)
27. He caught the boy (a)/ steal (b)/ the parcel (c)/ No error. (d)
28. I declined the invitation (a)/ not because I did not want to go, (b)/ but because I have no time. (c)/ No error (d)
29. The students were (a)/ looking forward to/ (c) meet the eminent scientist. / No error (d)
30. The lady made the (a)/ little boy to wash (b)/ all the clothes. (c)/ No error. (d)
31. We must get this letter (a)/ send/ as soon as possible. (c)/ No error (d)
32. The Department (a)/ assured us that (b) / a series of seminars (c) / were to be arranged (d)
33. A great many (a) / students has (b) / been declared (c) / successful (d)
34. The Manager says that (a) / there is (b) / many important details (c) / to attend before this gets launched (d)
35. This news were (b) / broadcast (b)/ all over the world (c) / from ABC Radio. (d)
36. The United States (a) / of America (b) / are the richest (c) / country of the world (d)
37. More than one (a) / student have (b) / taken the interview (c) / for this company. (d)
38. Everybody (a) / among (b) / your friends (c) / like playing. (d)
39. Three-fourths of (a) / the land (b) / have been (c) / ploughed (d)
40. One of the issues (a) / which was (b) / discussed at the meeting (c) / was raised by him. (d)
41. The Elite class (a) / have no soft corner (b) / for the (c) / poor. (d)
42. Mr. Budhrani, (a) / my friend and professor, (b) / are known for (c) / his good behavior. (d)
43. The Party Chief (a) / and the Chief Minister (b) / was (c) / absent. (d)
44. The manager (a) / as well as (b) / the clerks (c) / were fighting. (d)
45. Neither the students (a) / nor the teacher (b) / were in his (c) / class. (d)
46. Not only (a) / the principal (b) / but also the students (c) / was laughing. (d)
47. During freedom struggle (a) / many a patriot (b) / were filled with patriotism (c) / No error (d)
48. The chief idea of very common type of traveler (a) / is to see as many objects of interest (b) / as he possibly could (c) / No error (d)
49. When the dentist came in (a) / my tooth was stopped aching (b) / out of fear that I might lose my tooth (c) / No error (d)
50. People have a right to criticize (a) / but at the same time each of them (b) / have to remember his duty also (c) / No error (d)

1. (d) No correction required.
2. (b) Change 'bent to harm' on 'bent to harming'. 'Bent on' means determined to do.
3. (b) Change 'to go' to 'going'. Gerund comes after 'avoid'.
4. (a) Remove 'as'. 'Considered' is not followed by 'as'.
5. (b) 'Gerund' will come after 'mind'. Change 'be' into 'being'.
6. (b) Change 'am having' into 'have'. When 'have' means 'to possess', it does not take 'ing' for gerund.
7. (b) 'Bade' (V_2 of bid) takes 'plain infinitive' (V_1) after it and not 'infinitive' (to + V_1). Change 'submit' into 'submit'.
8. (c) Use 'attend' after 'than'. Because 'would rather' is followed by ' V_1 ' and after 'than' the form of verb will come.
9. (c) Use V_1 after 'let'. Remove 'to'.
10. (a) Add 'while I was' before 'walking alone'.
11. (a) Add 'done' after 'have'. Different forms of verbs should be used in a sentence if required.
12. (a) Remove 'again'. 'Repeat' should not be followed by 'again' because this will make the sentence superfluous.
13. (d) Change 'have' to 'had'. The sentence is in past.
14. (c) Add 'in' after 'sleep'. If 'infinitive' is used after 'noun' then appropriate preposition should follow 'infinitive'.
15. (b) Change 'thought' to 'think' as 'must' is a modal which is always followed by V_1 .
16. (d) No correction required.
17. (c) Remove 'was'.
18. (d) No correction required.
19. (a) Replace 'came' with 'come' as did not is always followed by V_1 .
20. (c) Replace 'lifted' with 'left' as 'lift' means raise to a higher position or level and 'left' means away from.
21. (a) While I was walking
22. (b) Decided
23. (c) A steaming cup

24. (b) Meeting
25. (a) I have always been
26. (c) Sold off
27. (b) Stealing
28. (c) Had to is correct
29. (c) Meeting
30. (c) Remove to
31. (c) Sent1
32. (c) Replace 'were' with 'was'
33. (c) Replace 'has' with 'have'
34. (b) Replace 'is' with 'are'
35. (a) Replace 'were' with 'was'
36. (c) Replace 'are' with 'is'
37. (b) Replace 'have' with 'has'
38. (d) Likes
39. (a) Replace 'have' with 'has'
40. (b) Replace 'was' with 'were'
41. (b) Replace 'have' with 'has'
42. (c) Replace 'are' with 'is'
43. (c) Replace 'was' with 'were'
44. (d) Replace 'were' with 'was'
45. (c) Replace 'were' with 'was'
46. (d) Replace 'was' with 'were'
47. (c) Replace 'were' by 'was'
48. (c) Replace 'could' by 'can'
49. (b) Replace 'was' by 'had'
50. (c) Replace 'have' by 'has'



Subject Verb Agreement or Syntax

In English, the basic structure of a sentence is as follows:

'Subject + Verb + Object'

Now, for a sentence to be grammatically correct, the verb must agree with the subject. In the other words, verb used must be in accordance with the person and number of subject.

For example, look at the following sentence

(a) Shivam writes a letter (Singular verb is used with singular Subject)

(b) They write a letter (Plural verb used with Plural subject)

In order to attain grammatical accuracy some rules must be followed which are as follows

Rule 1: If two subjects are joined by 'and' and they denote two separate entities or ideas, plural verb will be used

For Ex- (a) Ravi and Rakesh are playing.

(b) You and Amit are late today.

Rule 2: If two (or more) nouns or adjectives are joined by 'and' but they denote a single person/thing, singular verb is used.

For Ex- (a) This black and white tie is mine.

(b) Bread and butter, is my favourite breakfast.

(c) Slow and steady, wins the race

Rule 3: If the subjects are joined by expressions like "alongwith, with, as well as, In addition to, besides, nothing, unlike, like, no less than, etc" the verb that follows agrees with the first subject

For Ex- (a) Rohan as well as his friends is playing.

(b) They along with their teacher are going on vacations.

Rule 4: If two subjects are joined by "either.....or, neither.....nor, nor, or, not only.....but also" the verb agrees with the subject nearest to it.

For Ex- (a) Neither Ram nor Rohan is coming today.

(b) Not only Shyam but also his parents were present in the wedding.

Rule 5: "Neither of, either of, none of" etc. are followed by plural noun and singular verb.

For Ex- (a) Neither of these two girls is clever.

(b) Either of you was absent from the class.

Rule 6: Sometimes words like "Somebody, Everybody, each, nobody, anybody, everyone, everybody, nothing, every, anything" are used as subjects. In such case singular verb agrees with them.

For Ex- (a) Nobody knows about the future.

(b) Nothing is impossible if you have determination.

(c) Each boy is good in Maths.

Rule 7: If following expressions are followed by uncountable noun. We use singular verb with them.

"Most of, Half of, some of, enough of, plenty of, a lot of"

For Ex- (a) Some milk is needed.

(b) Most of the work has been done.

- Rule 8:** Similarly if following expressions are followed by countable noun we use plural verb with them.
"Most of/Half of, some of, enough of, plenty of, a lot of"
For Ex- (a) Some questions are difficult.
 (b) Most of the boys were absent.
- Rule 9:** **"More than one"** is followed by singular countable noun and singular verb.
For Ex- (a) More than one boy was absent.
 (b) More than one man was against the proposal.
 ⇒ But, **"More than two/three/four"** is followed by plural noun and plural verb.
For Ex- (a) More than two boys were absent.
 (b) More than ten houses were damaged in the flood.
 ⇒ Similarly, sentences with following structure use plural verb.
For Ex- (a) More teachers than one are present.
 (b) More books than one are new.
- Rule 10:** Following expression are followed by plural noun and plural verb.
"A large number of, A number of, A great number of, large number of"
For Ex- (a) A large number of cows are grazing in the field.
 (b) A number of boys are playing cricket.
 ⇒ But, 'the number of' is always followed by singular verb
For Ex- (a) The number of children is twenty.
 (b) The number of passenger in Metro is increasing.
- Rule 11:** We use plural subject and Plural verb with the following:
"Many, A great many, A good many, Many of, A great many of, A good many of, both, several, various, Both of, Several of, various of, few, a few, very few, few of, a few of, very few of"
For Ex- (a) Many boy are absent today.
 (b) A great many actors are coming.
 (c) Many of the girls are taking part in the contest.
 (d) Very few students are hard working.
 ⇒ But, 'many a' is followed by singular noun and singular verb.
For Ex- (a) Many a boy has come for the class.
 (b) Many a car has been stolen.
- Rule 12:** If we use **'the'** before any adjective, then **'Plural verb'** is used
 i.e. **The weak, The rich, The poor, The honest, The injured, The dumb, The French**, etc. are all used as plural subject.
For Ex- (a) The poor are generally hardworking.
 (b) The rich are not always happy.
- Rule 13:** If **'Nothing but/Everything but'** is followed by uncountable noun or countable noun, singular verb is used.
For Ex- (a) Nothing but milk is sold.
 (b) Nothing but birds was seen.
 (c) Everything but books is sold.

Rule 14: 'One of the' is always followed by Plural noun and is agreed with singular verb.

For Ex- (a) One of the boys was playing chess

(b) One of the girls is crying.

Rule 15: If there is any definite unit/distance/height, etc. followed by the construction: Numeral + Plural Noun, then the verb is always singular.

For Ex- (a) Ten thousand rupees is a good amount.

(b) Twenty tons of rice is enough for us.

⇒ But, if it refers to different units in the construction of Numerical Adjective + Plural Noun, then takes a Plural verb.

For Ex- Twelve hundred rupees have been spent on shopping.

Rule 16: If who/which/ that is used as a relative pronoun, then the verb that follows depends on antecedent.

For eg. I, who am a cricketer, play here.

↓ ↑
Relative Pronoun Verb according to subject

The man who was sitting there, is my father.

Rule 17: With expression like if/as if/ as though/ I wish etc only 'were' form of 'to be' is used

For Ex- (a) I wish, I were the President of India.

(b) If I were you, I would have finished the work.

Rule 18: If an article is placed before two nouns, it means the person/thing is the same for which two nouns are used.

For Ex- Mr. Sharma, The chairman and Managing Director of the company, has arrived.

Here single article (the) is placed before chairman and Managing Director. It means that Mr. Sharma is both the chairman and M.D. of the company

⇒ But if an article is used before every noun. Then the nouns refer to different persons.

For Ex- The director and the producer have come.

Rule 19: 'All' can be used in both 'countable' and 'uncountable'. When used as uncountable, we use singular verb and when used as countable, it takes plural verb.

For Ex- (a) All is good now a days.

(b) Here all is uncountable, Hence verb is singular.

(c) All have gone to Mumbai.

Here all is countable, hence verb is plural

Rule 20: Whenever 'Amount of/ Quantity of' is followed by an uncountable noun, singular verb follows

For Ex- The amount of milk is sufficient.

Rule 21: Some nouns exist only in plural form. Such nouns are: Scissors, tongs, pliers, trousers, Pajamas, Shorts, Sunglasses, gallows, riches, savings, congratulations, regards, alms, wages, belongings, troops, tactics, etc.

The verb that follows the nouns given above is always plural.

For Ex- (a) Where are my pants?

(b) His new sunglasses are quite expensive.

Rule 22: Some nouns like Scenery, Poetry, Furniture, Hair, Business, Mischief, Information, Luggage, Work, Traffic, Stationery, Equipment, Evidence, Electricity, Behaviour, crockery, etc. are uncountable. Hence, Singular verb is used with them.

For Ex- (a) The scenery of Switzerland mesmerises everyone.
(b) The furniture that I bought yesterday is really comfortable.

Rule 23: Some nouns like **Economics, ethics, mathematics, rickets**, etc. are plural in form but Singular in meaning. Hence, they take Singular verb.

For Ex- (a) Economics is an easy Subject.
(b) Politics is a dirty game.

But, if the above plural looking subjects are particularised or passessed, they become plural nouns and the verb that follows is also plural.

For Ex- Politics is a dirty game.

Since the above statement describes politics in a general form. Therefore the verb (is) that follows is also singular.

⇒ Now, look at the following sentence:

Politics of our Country are dirty.

Here, 'Politics' has been particularised. Hence, plural verb has been used.

Rule 24: Similarly, there are some nouns, like **Cattle, cavalry, infantry, children, gentry** etc. that are singular in form but plural in meaning. Hence they take plural verb.

For Ex- Cattle are grazing in the field.

Rule 25: Collective nouns always take 'singular verb'.

For Ex- (a) The pride of lions is hunting.
(b) This bundle of sticks is heavy.

Exercise

Directions: Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical error in it. The error, if any, will be in one part of the sentence. The number of that part is the answer. If there is no error, the answer is '4' i.e. No error, (Ignore the errors of punctuation, if any).

1. He is one of the richest and (1)/most generous men of (2)/ the town. (3)/No error (4)
2. Computer and (1)/telecommunication has(2)/developed of information technology. (3)/No error (4)
3. Bread and butter (1)/are essential for (2)/ one's life. (3)/No error (4)
4. Every man and woman in a family (1)/are responsible for (2)/ the upbringing of a child (3)/No error(4)
5. Either she (1)/or I will pay (2)/ the fees. (3)/No error (4)
6. Nothing but (1)/trees were seen (2)/ in the garden. (3)/No error (4)
7. Each and every (1)/man, woman and child (2)/were given food yesterday evening. (3)/No error (4)
8. Five hours are too short (1)/a time to judge (2)/ one's character. (3)/No error (4)
9. Many a passenger (1)/have been (2)/ taken to the hospital. (3)/No error (4)
10. The teacher as well as (1)/his students has committed (2)/ this mistake. (3)/No error (4)
11. The behaviour (1)/of the students (2)/wasnot proper. (3)/No error (4)
12. Twenty miles (1)/are not a great (2)/distance in these daysof rapid travel. (3)/No error (4)
13. A group of (1)/people were (2)/sitting at the street corner. (3)/No error (4)
14. The economics (1)/of the situation (2)/has been discussed at some length. (3)/No error (4)
15. The teacher along with his two sons (1)/is doing research (2)/ these days. (3)/No error (4)
16. Either of the two boys (1)/are eligible (2)/ for selection for the post. (3)/No error (4)

For Ex- (a) The scenery of Switzerland mesmerises everyone.

(b) The furniture that I bought yesterday is really comfortable.

Rule 23: Some nouns like **Economics, ethics, mathematics, rickets**, etc. are plural in form but Singular in meaning. Hence, they take Singular verb.

For Ex- (a) Economics is an easy Subject.

(b) Politics is a dirty game.

But, if the above plural looking subjects are particularised or passessed, they become plural nouns and the verb that follows is also plural.

For Ex- Politics is a dirty game.

Since the above statement describes politics in a general form. Therefore the verb (is) that follows is also singular.

⇒ Now, look at the following sentence:

Politics of our Country are dirty.

Here, 'Politics' has been particularised. Hence, plural verb has been used.

Rule 24: Similarly, there are some nouns, like

Cattle, cavalry, infantry, children, gentry etc. that are singular in form but plural in meaning. Hence they take plural verb.

For Ex- Cattle are grazing in the field.

Rule 25: Collective nouns always take 'singular verb'.

For Ex- (a) The pride of lions is hunting.

(b) This bundle of sticks is heavy.

Exercise

Directions: Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical error in it. The error, if any, will be in one part of the sentence. The number of that part is the answer. If there is no error, the answer is '4' i.e. No error, (Ignore the errors of punctuation, if any).

1. He is one of the richest and (1)/most generous men of (2)/ the town. (3)/No error (4)
2. Computer and (1)/telecommunication has(2)/developed of information technology. (3)/No error (4)
3. Bread and butter (1)/are essential for (2)/ one's life. (3)/No error (4)
4. Every man and woman in a family (1)/are responsible for (2)/ the upbringing of a child (3)/No error(4)
5. Either she (1)/or I will pay (2)/ the fees. (3)/No error (4)
6. Nothing but (1)/trees were seen (2)/ in the garden. (3)/No error (4)
7. Each and every (1)/man, woman and child (2)/were given food yesterday evening. (3)/No error (4)
8. Five hours are too short (1)/a time to judge (2)/ one's character. (3)/No error (4)
9. Many a passenger (1)/have been (2)/ taken to the hospital. (3)/No error (4)
10. The teacher as well as (1)/his students has committed (2)/ this mistake. (3)/No error (4)
11. The behaviour (1)/of the students (2)/wasnot proper. (3)/No error (4)
12. Twenty miles (1)/are not a great (2)/distance in these daysof rapid travel. (3)/No error (4)
13. A group of (1)/people were (2)/sitting at the street corner. (3)/No error (4)
14. The economics (1)/of the situation (2)/has been discussed at some length. (3)/No error (4)
15. The teacher along with his two sons (1)/is doing research (2)/ these days. (3)/No error (4)
16. Either of the two boys (1)/are eligible (2)/ for selection for the post. (3)/No error (4)

17. Forty kilometers is a big (1)/ distance for me, (2)/ I am unable to walk on foot. (3)/No error (4)
18. Physics is an important (1)/ subject in (2)/the modern world. (3)/No error (4)
19. One of his (1)/ friend was injured (2)/in a railway accident. (3)/No error (4)
20. I met the chairman (1)/and the director who claims to be (2)/ Ram's father. (3)/No error (4)
21. Four miles beyond (1)/ that pasture was seen thousands (2)/ of cattle including some lambs. (3)/ No error (4)
22. It is noticed that the elite class have no soft (1)/ corner for the downtrodden who are the (2)/ victims of the present social set-up. (3)/ No error (4)
23. Is there any difficulties (1)/ in disposing of this gorgeous building (2)/ built on such a spacious and beautiful north campus. (3)/ No error (4)
24. The request of the workers' union that their wages should be (1)/ increased were supported by (2)/ vast majority. (3)/ No error (4)
25. The publisher says that there is (1)/ many important details to attend (2)/ to before this book goes printed. (3)/ No error (4)
26. We should not forget that we have a right to criticize but (1)/ at the same time each of us (2)/ have to remember the duty also. (3)/ No error (4)
27. One of the biggest industrial houses in (1)/ Chennai is on the verge of (2)/ declaring a lock out. (3)/ No error (4)
28. A body of volunteers have been organized (1)/ to help the faculty members (2)/ in their attempt to raise the funds. (3)/ No error (4)
29. Everybody among the businessmen (1)/ were enjoying drinking when the Manager of the hotel (2)/ was shot dead by the thief. (3)/ No error (4)
30. Although these building are in need of repair, (1)/ there have been much improvement (2)/ in the appearance. (3)/ No error (4)
31. Not only the doctor but also the nurses of this nursing (1)/ home is very kind and helpful (2)/ to the attendants. (3)/ No error (4)
32. There appears a number of new faces in the hall (1)/ and I really do not know where they have (2)/ come from and why. (3)/ No error (4)
33. The available statistics indicate that the population of the world (1)/ will double in about 30 years and human life will become (2)/ more and more miserable. (3)/ No error (4)
34. What were once glorious forts (1)/ are now nothing but piles of (2)/ rubble. (3)/ No error (4)
35. Whether you should get married (1)/ now or whether you should remain single all your life (2)/ is your personal problem. (3)/ No error (4)
36. Does his daily struggle (1)/ for existence leave time to ponder over (2)/ international affairs? (3)/ No error (4)
37. Either the manager (1)/ or his assistants always try to misguide the public (2)/ regarding the vacancies in the factory. (3)/ No error (4)
38. In our college, it was obligatory for each of (1)/ the students to buy (2)/ his own instruments. (3)/ No error (4)
39. Those athletes who did not adhere to the rules of athletics (1)/ was deprived of taking part (2)/ in the summer Olympics. (3)/ No error (4)
40. Not Shawn and his friends (1)/ but Harry has surreptitiously taken (2)/ your photographs and shown them to her friends. (3)/ No error (4)
41. An ability to shrink and reduce oneself to a tiny form and reverse the process whenever desired (1)/ belongs to the realm of fantasy and is heard of only (2)/ in fairy tales or tales of magic. (3)/No error (4)
42. Neither Rajni nor Ragini (1)/ were to take to her heels (2)/ when they saw a cobra lying at the gate. (3)/ No error (4)

43. None of the five players (1)/ who have been given a chance (2)/ to join this team play confidently. (3)/ No error (4)
44. What she says and what she does (1)/ are incomprehensible (2)/to an ordinary mind like yours. (3)/ No error (4)
45. Nobody else but these young women have (1)/ played a prank on you, but it is pitiable (2)/that you don't understand it. (3)/No error (4)1
46. Some highly significant observations has been made by the former UN (1)/ Secretary General, Mr. Kofi Annan, in his annual report (2)/ submitted to the current session of General Assembly. (3)/No error(4)
47. If any proof was needed to show that the United Nations (1)/ have lately become a policy tool in the hands of the U.S.A. and that (2)/ the world's sole might has a subservient international body, it was provided by Junior Bush's angry comment. (3)/No error (4)
48. If Mahatma Gandhi was alive (1)/ he would start weeping (2)/ to see the present condition of India. (3)/No error (4)
49. Was she a bird (1)/ she would definitely fly to you (2)/ and say that she could not live without you. (3)/No error (4)
50. There were reports a few days before the Parliament Session commenced (1)/ that concrete measures to (2)/restructure the movement would be considered. (3)/No error (4)

Solutions

1. (4); No error
2. (2); 'Use 'have' in place of 'has'. If two singular nouns are connected by 'and' then we always use 'plural verb'

Example-

Milton and Jonson is brothers.

(x)

Milton and Jonson **are** brothers.

(✓)

Kathar and Arak is situated in the Buxar district.

(x)

Kathar and Arak **are** situated in the Buxar district.

(✓)

3. (2); Use 'is' in place of 'are'. Some nouns represent 'Singular idea or concept' when used in a pair. With such noun pairs singular verb is used.

Bread and butter, horse and carriage, pen and ink, rice and curry; sum and substance etc.

Note: When these nouns represents more than one idea or things, plural verb is used.

Example-

Rice and curry **are** his favourite meal.

(x)

Rice and curry **is** his favourite meal.

(✓)

Bread and butter **is** sold in almost all shops of the market.

(x)

Bread and butter **are** sold in almost all shops of the market.

(✓)

4. (2); Use 'is' in place of 'are'. Singular verb is used with words such as 'each' and 'every'.

Example-

Each boy and girl **have** passed.

(x)

Each boy and girl **has** passed.

(✓)

Each students**want** some magazines.

(✓)

Each of the girls **have** come.

(x)

Each of the girls **has** come.

(✓)

5. (2); Use 'shall' in place of 'will'. 'Shall' is used with the 'First person subjects'.

6. (2); Use 'was' in place of 'were'.

Structure nsf[k,&

Nothing but + Uncountable Noun + SV

Nothing but + Plural countable Noun + SV

Nothing but furniture are lying here. (x)

Nothing but furniture is lying here. (✓)

↓
UCN

Nothing but book is found here.

↓ ↓
SCN SV

Nothing but books are found here.

↓ ↓
PCN PV

Nothing but books is found here.

↓ ↓
PCN SV

7. (3); Use 'was' in place of 'were'.

8. (1); Use 'is' in place of 'are'. For a finite 'distance and amount', Singular Verb is used.

Example&

Ten thousand rupees are a huge amount. (x)

Ten thousand rupees is a huge amount. (✓)

9. (2); Use 'has' in place of 'have'.

Example&

Many + PCN + PV

A good many / A great many + PCN + PV

Many a / an + SCN + SV

Many students has come. (x)

Many students have come. (✓)

Many a students have come. (x)

Many a student has come. (✓)

10. (4); No error

11. (4); No error

12. (2); Use 'is' in place of 'are'.

13. (2); Use 'was' in place of 'were'.

Example&

A word of collective Noun + of + PCN + SV

Example&

A panel of expert has come.

↓ ↓
SCN SV

A panel of experts have come.

↓ ↓
PCN PV

A panel of experts has come.

↓ ↓

(A world of collective noun)

PCN SV

A ban of musicians have come. (x)

A band of musicians has come. (✓)

14. (3); Use 'have been' in place of 'has been'.
15. (4); No error
16. (2); Use 'is' in place of 'are'. Either/Neither/One/ Each/ Every /anyone/everything etc. take singular verb.
17. (4); No error
18. (4); No error
19. (2); Use 'friends' in place of 'friend'.
20. (2); Remove 'the' before the word 'director' because both Nouns (Chairman and Director) are used for one person (Ram's father). So article(the) is used before first noun.
21. (2); Use 'were' in place of 'was'.
22. (1); 'Have' should be replaced by 'has'.
23. (1); Use 'are' in place of 'is'.
24. (2); Use 'was' in place of 'were'.
25. (1); Use 'are' in place of 'is'.
26. (1); Use 'has' in place of 'have'.
27. (4); No error.
28. (1); Use 'has' in place of 'have'.
29. (2); Use 'was' in place of 'were'.
30. (2); Use 'has' in place of 'have'.
31. (2); Use 'are' in place of 'is'.
32. (1); Use 'appear' in place of 'appears'.
33. (4); No error.
34. (4); No error.
35. (3); Use 'is' in place of 'are'.
36. (4); No error.
37. (4); No error.
38. (4); No error.
39. (2); Use 'were' in place of 'was'.
40. (4); No error.
41. (4); No error.
42. (2); Use 'was' in place of 'were'.
43. (4); No error.
44. (4); No error.
45. (4); No error.
46. (1); Use 'have' in place of 'has'.
47. (2); Use 'has' in place of 'have'.
48. (1); Use 'were' in place of 'was'.
49. (1); Use 'were' in place of 'was'.
50. (4); No error.

Modals

What are modal verbs?

Modals (also called modal verbs, modal auxiliary verbs, modal auxiliaries) are special verbs that behave irregularly in English. They are different from normal verbs like "work, play, visit..." They give additional information about the function of the main verb that follows it. They have a great variety of communicative functions.

Modals are special verbs. They are a type of auxiliary verb. We use them to show or indicate the possibility, certainty, permission, ability, and probability. Modals can take various forms.

Definition of Modals: Modals are special verbs that are different from normal verbs. They are never used alone and are always followed by a principal verb.

They provide additional information about the principal verb. They are used to express certainty, possibility, willingness, obligation, necessity and ability.

The List of the Modals with their Positive and Negative forms is given below;

POSITIVE	NEGATIVE
Will	Will not
Would	Would not
Shall	Shall not
Should	Should not
May	May not
Might	Might not
Can	Cannot
Could	Could not
Must	Must not
Have to	Have not to
Need	Need not
Ought	Ought not to
Dare	Dare not
Used to	Used not to

Uses of Modal 'Will'

- (1) The first rule for the use of Modal 'will' is that it expresses pure future with second and third person subjects.
- (2) The second rule for use of Modal 'will' is that it shows willingness, intention, promise, determination with first person as a subject.
- (3) The third and last use of Modal 'will' is that it tells about the characteristic, habit, assumption, invitation, request and insistence.

Examples of Modal 'Will' are given below:

- (1) You will die of a heart attack. (Pure Future)
- (2) The prime minister will hoist the flag. (Pure Future)
- (3) I will meet you again. (Promise)
- (4) I will need your help. (Willingness/ intention)
- (5) He will achieve his goals. (Determination)
- (6) A child will usually obey his parents. (Characteristic habit)
- (7) He will be here at any moment. (Assumption)
- (8) Will you go with me. (Request)
- (9) He will not listen to his teacher's advice. (Insistence)

Uses of Modal 'Would'

The rule for the use of Modal 'would' is that it expresses past habits, polite request, wish/ preference or imaginary condition.

Examples of Modal 'Would' are given below:

- (1) He would wake up early in the morning and go to work. (Past habits)
- (2) My mother would always make me my favorite dishes. (Past habits)
- (3) Would you get me a glass of water, please? (Polite request)
- (4) I would like to see the owner. (Polite request)
- (5) I wish you would be here. (Wish)
- (6) I would rather have food at home than outside. (Preference)
- (7) I would buy a house if I won the lottery. (Preference)

Uses of Modal 'Shall'

- (1) The first rule for the use of Modal 'Shall' is that it expresses pure future with the first person as the subject.
- (2) The second rule for the use of Modal 'Shall' is that it is used to ask for advice, suggestions, requests, etc. with the first person in the interrogative.
- (3) The third rule for the use of Modal 'Shall' is that it is used to express command, threat, warning, promise, assurance, determination, etc. with the second and third person as the subjects.

Examples of Modal 'Shall' are given below:

- (1) We shall go to school tomorrow. (Pure Future)
- (2) I shall teach you to dance. (Pure Future)
- (3) Shall I bring a glass of fresh juice for you? (Request)
- (4) Shall I close the door? (Advice)
- (5) Shall we go to the market tomorrow? (Suggestion)
- (6) You shall get a reward for your achievement. (Promise/ Assurance)
- (7) You shall go to your room. (Command)
- (8) They shall win the match. (Determination)

Uses of Modal 'Should'

- (1) The first rule for the use of Modal 'Should' is that it is used to express duty, obligation, advisability or desirability.
- (2) The second rule for the use of Modal 'Should' is that it is used to express logical interference, supposition, assumption, possibility or probability.
- (3) The third rule for the use of Modal 'Should' is that it is used to express a purpose after 'lest'.

Examples of Modal 'Should' are given below:

- (1) We should go to school every day. (Duty)
- (2) You should not be late for work. (Obligation/ Desirability)
- (3) You should exercise more often. (advisability)
- (4) He should be at the office by now. (Possibility)
- (5) If he should see me there, he will be happy. (Probable Condition)
- (6) Leave on time, lest you should miss the train. (should after lest)

Uses of Modal 'May'

The rule for the use of Modal

The rule for the use of Modal 'May' is that it is used to express possibility, permission, wish, faith, hope or a purpose.

Examples of Modal 'May' are given below:

- (1) It may snow in the evening. (Possibility)
- (2) May I go now, sir? (Permission)
- (3) May God always be with you. (Wish, faith or hope)
- (4) He is working hard so that he may get an appraisal. (Purpose)

Uses of Modal 'Might'

The rule for the use of Modal 'Might' is that it is used to express less possibility, permission or a guess.

Example of Modal Might are given below:

- (1) It might rain today. (Less possibility)
- (2) Might I go to get the files? (Permission)

- (3) That might be the new guard. (Guess)

Uses of Modal 'Can'

The rule for the use of Modal 'Can' is that it is used to express permission, possibility, ability or capacity.

Examples of Modal 'Can' are given below:

- (1) Can I go to the market? (Permission)
- (2) Anyone can be the thief. (Possibility)
- (3) He can stay awake for 2 days. (Ability/ Capacity)

Uses of Modal 'Could'

The rule for the use of Modal 'Could' is that it is used to express ability or capacity in the past, polite request or a possibility under certain circumstances.

Examples of Modal 'Could' are given below:

- (1) He could run very fast in his youth. (Ability/ Capacity in the past)
- (2) Could you wait for him? (Polite request)
- (3) If we had money, we could have bought a house. (Possibility under certain conditions)

Uses of Modal 'Must'

The rule for use of Modal 'Must' is that it is used to express obligation/ duty, necessity, compulsion, prohibition, emphatic advice, determination, assumption, conclusion/ inference, certainty/ strong probability.

Examples of Modal 'Must' are given below:

- (1) The children must obey their parents. (Duty)
- (2) We must not steal money from anyone. (Duty)
- (3) You must follow the orders of your boss. (Obligation)
- (4) I must reach work on time. (Necessity)
- (5) He must do as I say. (Compulsion)
- (6) You must not smoke in public places. (Prohibition)
- (7) You must see a dentist at once. (Emphatic advice)
- (8) We must not go before they come back. (Determination)
- (9) The students must be in their classes at this time. (Strong Probability)
- (10) He must be 40 years old. (Assumption)
- (11) He must have left by now. (Certainty)

Uses of Modal 'Have to'

The rule for the use of Modal 'Have to' is that it is used in the sense of must, to give advice or to recommend something.

Examples of Modal 'Have to' are given below:

- (1) I have to reach there by 9:30 pm. (in the sense of Must)
- (2) You have to start working soon. (Advice)

Uses of Modal 'Need'

The main rule for the use of Modal 'Need' is that it chiefly shows the absence of necessity or compulsion in negative and interrogative sentences.

Examples of the Modal Need are given below:

- (1) You need not worry about work.
- (2) Need I talk to her.

Uses of Modal 'Ought'

The rule for the use of Modal 'Ought' is that it is used to express the subjects obligation or duty and also to give advice.

Examples of Modal 'Ought' to be given below:

- (1) I ought to love my parents. (Obligation/ Duty)
- (2) We ought not to cheat anyone. (Duty)

- (3) You ought to practice for more than 2 hours a day if you want to clear the exam.

Uses of Modal 'Dare'

The rule for using the Modal 'Dare' is that it is used at places where we need to show courage. It is generally used in negative and interrogative.

Examples of Modal Dare are given below:

- (1) I dare not fail in my exams. (Negative)
(2) How dare you interrupt us? (Interrogative)

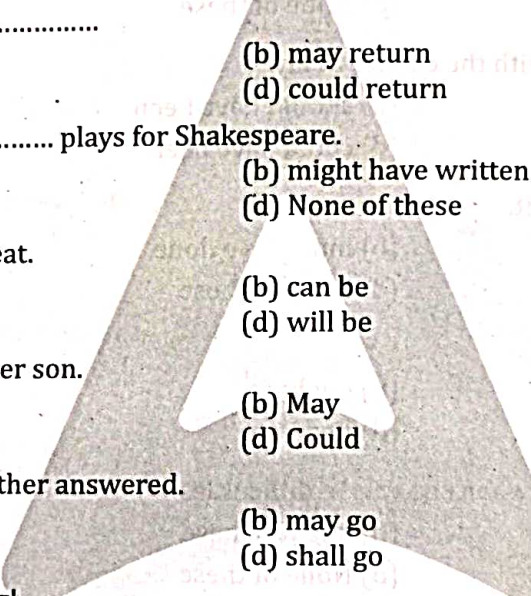
Uses of Modal 'Used to'

The rule for the usage of Modal 'Used to' is that it is used to express past habits and to express the existence of something in the past.

Examples of the Modal 'Used to' are given below:

- (1) I used to go swimming every morning. (Past Habits)
(2) There used to be a door at this place long ago. (Existence of something in the past)

Exercise

- 
- She expects that her son.....
(a) can return (b) may return
(c) should return (d) could return
 - It is possible Marlowe plays for Shakespeare.
(a) may write (b) might have written
(c) might write (d) None of these
 - All felt that he..... a cheat.
(a) may be (b) can be
(c) might be (d) will be
 - I go out? asked her son.
(a) Should (b) May
(c) must (d) Could
 - "Yes, you.....", the mother answered.
(a) should go (b) may go
(c) must go (d) shall go
 -our king live long!
(a) may (b) must
(c) Should (d) Will
 - We eat so that we live.
(a) may (b) might
(c) can (d) could
 - He went there so that he borrow money.
(a) may (b) can
(c) might (d) should
 - She advised that I curtail expenditure.
(a) should (b) shall
(c) should have (d) Could
 - We enjoyed the movie, you there.
(a) should have been (b) can be
(c) should be (d) None of these

11.you work hard, you will pass.
 (a) Would (b) Will
 (c) Should (d) Shall
12. I told him that I leave next day.
 (a) Should (b) should have
 (c) could (d) ought to
13. Make haste lest you late..
 (a) should get (b) should not get
 (c) may not got (d) shall got
14. She..... work hard if she wants to top the merit list.
 (a) must have (b) must
 (c) must not (d) would
15. She alone as it was raining heavily.
 (a) must not leave (b) must not have left
 (c) should not leave (d) None of these
16. There..... something wrong with the cooker today.
 (a) must be (b) should have been
 (c) must have been (d) could have been
17. Swati is gentle, her sister it.
 (a) should have done (b) must have done
 (c) should do (d) None of these
18. You..... obey your parents.
 (a) should (b) ought to
 (c) must (d) need not
19. You stood by your sister, when she was in difficulties.
 (a) ought to (b) ought to have
 (c) should have (d) None of these
20. She told me that she English fluently and was very happy.
 (a) could speak (b) could have spoken
 (c) can speak (d) will speak

Fill in the blanks with suitable alternatives.

What would you do if you see someone whose clothes have caught fire? You (Q21) go near him (Q22) tell him to roll on the ground immediately. It (Q23) put the fire out. The burnt cloth must be removed quickly and the injured area should be bathed in cold water. Great care (Q24) taken while you wash the patient's injury. Dry it with a soft towel as gently as you (Q25) If there is antibiotic burn cream, you (Q26) gently apply it on the wound. By this time someone (Q27) have made arrangement to take the patient to a doctor. The doctor (Q28) ask the patient to take tetanus injection.

21.
 (a) would not (b) must not
 (c) will not (d) cannot

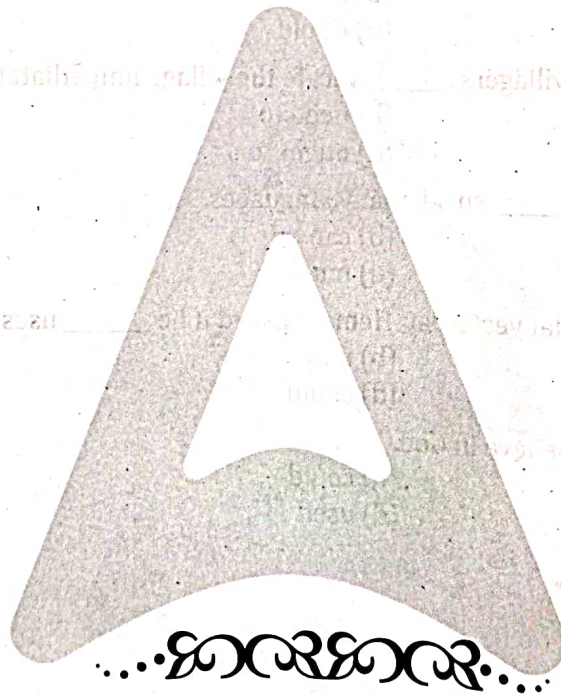
22. (a) should
(c) will
23. (a) can
(c) may
24. (a) shall
(c) treed
25. (a) will
(c) can
26. (a) should
(c) must
27. (a) may
(c) can
28. (a) will
(c) may
29. It is a rule and you _____ obey it strictly.
(a) should
(c) must
30. _____ you like (to have) some water?
(a) Do
(c) Can
31. _____ I come in?
(a) May
(c) Can
32. _____ you play with us?
(a) May
(c) Shall
33. I _____ swim across the river when I was young.
(a) could
(c) Should
34. It _____ not surprise you if you were eyed coldly by the conductor.
(a) should
(c) will
35. They _____ be sorry for their behavior.
(a) need not
(c) should
- (b) can
(d) could
- (b) would
(d) should
- (b) will
(d) must
- (b) shall
(d) would
- (b) might
(d) can
- (b) would
(d) might
- (b) shall
(d) should
- (b) could
(d) need to
- (b) Shall
(d) Would
- (b) Will
(d) Should
- (b) Will
(d) Can
- (b) can
(d) must
- (b) shall
(d) would
- (b) ought to
(d) must

36. If you read newspapers, you _____ notice that there is definite space for letters.
(a) would (b) could
(c) will (d) can
37. If you had not been there, I _____ differently.
(a) might have acted (b) might act
(c) might acted (d) may have acted
38. Calamities such as earthquakes _____ by a human being.
(a) would not be controlled (b) may not be controlled
(c) should not be controlled (d) cannot be controlled
39. You _____ obey the advice of your teacher.
(a) could (b) are
(c) should (d) can
40. For a better future, we _____ our forests.
(a) must conserve (b) conserve
(c) cut (d) may conserve
41. All the youngsters _____ respect their elders and teachers.
(a) can (b) may
(c) might (d) must
42. Your child is safe in the hands of a policeman. You _____ not worry.
(a) can (b) dare
(c) need (d) should
43. "_____ you please open that window?" - she asked politely.
(a) Could (b) Can
(c) Must (d) Shall
44. You _____ have caught the train if you had run fast.
(a) must (b) can
(c) should (d) could
45. Raj _____ speak English.
(a) can (b) may
(c) would (d) is
46. You _____ help your poor friends.
(a) will (b) would
(c) ought to (d) may
47. How _____ you talk to my wife?
(a) ought (b) dare
(c) need (d) might
48. We _____ keep our city clean.
(a) should (b) could
(c) would (d) none
49. Electricity _____ in every village.
(a) should be supply (b) should supply
(c) should be supplied (d) should supplied
50. He _____ be doctor, if he worked hard.
(a) should (b) will
(c) would (d) shall

51. _____ God bless you, dear!
(a) Will (b) May
(c) Can (d) Might
52. To avoid accidents, we _____ have to follow traffic rules and regulations.
(a) should (b) must
(c) could (d) shall
53. You _____ wear a sweater to keep yourself warm.
(a) must (b) can
(c) might (d) could
54. You _____ go home.
(a) may (b) can
(c) might (d) Not Any
55. Every one _____ keep surrounding clean.
(a) can (b) should
(c) could (d) None of the above
56. _____ you have a wonderful result!
(a) Can (b) May
(c) Might (d) Could
57. The level of flood is rising; the villagers _____ vacate the village immediately.
(a) must (b) need to
(c) should (d) ought to
58. George has travelled a lot. He _____ speak many languages.
(a) should (b) can
(c) will (d) must
59. When Hemant was at Chirag's flat yesterday, Hemant asked if he _____ uses the phone.
(a) can (b) may
(c) must (d) could
60. I _____ to be an atheist but I believe in God.
(a) would (b) could
(c) ought (d) used

Solutions

1.	b	2.	b	3.	c	4.	b	5.	b	6.	a	7.	a	8.	c	9.	a	10.	a
11.	c	12.	a	13.	a	14.	b	15.	b	16.	a	17.	a	18.	b	19.		20.	a
21.	b	22.	a	23.	b	24.	d	25.	c	26.	a	27.	d	28.	a	29.	c	30.	d
31.	a	32.	b	33.	a	34.	d	35.	a	36.	c	37.	a	38.	d	39.	c	40.	a
41.	d	42.	c	43.	a	44.	d	45.	a	46.	c	47.	b	48.	a	49.	c	50.	c
51.	b	52.	b	53.	c	54.	b	55.	b	56.	b	57.	a	58.	b	59.	d	60.	c



Chapter 10

Adverb

Introduction

→ An adverb is word that qualifies:-

(a) A verb

Ex - He speaks softly
Verb adverb

(b) An adjective

Ex - He drank very hot tea
Adverb adj

(c) An adverb

Ex - He worked quite hard
adverb adverb

(d) A preposition

Ex - The helicopter hovered exactly over his house.
Adverb prep

(e) A conjunction

Ex - He likes her simply because she has a clear conscience.
Adverb conj

(f) A complete sentence

Ex - Fortunately he did not hurt himself.
Adverb Sentence

→ Usually, an adjective qualifies a noun or pronoun but a few adverbs for Ex: 'only' even at last, almost, can also be used for same purpose.

Ex - (1) Only Hari has passed.
Adverb Noun

(2) Only they can save you.
Adverb Pronoun

Classification of Adverbs:

→ Adverbs are of three types:

1. Simple adverbs
2. Interrogative adverbs
3. Relative adverbs

1. **Simple Adverb:** If denotes time, place, number, manner, frequency, degree, affirmation, or negation.

(i) **Adverb of Manner:** An adverb of manner tells how a work is done.

The following words express the manner of an action and answer the question 'how', boldly, bravely, quickly, slowly, easily, badly, well, etc.

Ex - He works honestly.

He works slowly.

Remember: The adverb ending in 'ly' generally comes under adverb of manner.

Adjective

Slow

Glad

Honest

Adverb

Slowly

Gladly

Honestly

- Miser, niggard, scholar & coward are few nouns in which we often get confused between their adjective and adverb forms.

Noun	Adjective form	Adverb form
Coward	Cowardly	In a cowardly manner
Miser	Miserly	In a miserly manner
Scholar	Scholarly	In a scholarly

Remember:

- A few words have the same adverb and adjective forms.

Ex - **Fast, straight, out right, direct, hard, late high, safe and quiet.**

Adverb Adjective

Ex - He word hard This is a hard work

- **Adverb of time:** after, ago, early, late, now, then, soon, today, tomorrow etc. are adverbs of time. It shows when did the action take place.

Ex - I came late.

- **Adverb of place:** here, there, near, by, up, down, in, out, everywhere, nowhere, somewhere anywhere, nowhere else etc. are some examples of adverb of place.

Ex - I. Where is your match?

II. It is here.

- **Adverbs of manner:** boldly, bravely, quickly, slowly, easily, badly, hard, how, fast, well, etc. some example of adverb of manner.

Ex - I. How is she typing?

II. She is typing carefully.

- **Adverb of frequency/number:** once, twice, thrice, always, never, seldom, often, frequently etc. some examples of adverb of frequency/number.

It shows how often.

Ex - I. He is always punctual.

II. She has always helped me.

- **Adverbs of degree:** almost, very, very much, too, enough, so much, just, of course, quite rather rarely, hardly, much, more, most, barely, etc. are some examples of adverb of degree.

Ex - I. He is too ill to go to work.

II. He is rich enough to maintain a car.

- **Adverbs of reason:** So, hence, therefore, on account of consequently etc. are some examples of adverb of reason.

Ex - I. I could not come because I was not well.

II. I do not like him since he has cheated my people.

- **Adverbs of affirmation:** Surely, certainly, truly, etc. are some examples of adverb of affirmation.

Ex - I. She will truly help you.

II. I will surely repay the loan

- **Adverbs of negation:** No, not, never etc. are some examples of adverb of negation.

Ex - I. He did not reply to my letter.

II. I have never cheated anybody.

- **Relative adverbs:** When, where, why and how, etc. are some examples of relative adverb.

Ex - I. I do not know where he was gone.

II. He will come when I call him.

- **Interrogative adverbs:** Why, when, where, now, etc. are some examples of interrogative adverb.

Ex - Why are you surprised?

Where has she seen me?

Degrees Of comparison

Adverbs has three degree of comparison : positive, comparative and superlative.

	Positive	Comparative	superlative
(a) fast	fast	faster	fastest
hard	hard	harder	hardest
high	high	higher	highest
(b) slowly	slowly	more slowly	most slowly
politely	politely	more politely	most politely
wisely	wisely	more wisely	most wisely
(c) well	well	better	best
badly	badly	worse	worst
much	much	more	most
little	little	less	least

Rule 1: With the positive degree 'as + positive degree + as' is used in the affirmative and 'not + as + positive degree + as' is used in the negative.

Ex - I. Suresh works as hard as Ramesh.

II. He does not sing as melodiously as she does.

Rule 2: With the comparative degree we use 'comparative form + than'. For example.

Ex - Dolly works harder than Daisy.

Rule 3: With the comparative degree we can use 'of the two + noun + + the + comparative' form.

Ex - Of the two girls Lina behaves the more politely

Rule 4: The construction 'the + comparative the + comparative' is used to express parallel increase or decrease.

Ex - The higher you go the wider it is.

Rule 5: 'Else' is followed by 'but' and 'rather' is followed by 'than'.

Ex - I. I would rather die than beg.

II. It is nothing else than foolishness. (Use 'than' in place of 'but')

Rule 6: Adverbs like **seldom, never, nowhere, nothing, hardly, scarcely, neither, barely, rarely** are negative in meaning.

Ex - I. I rarely went to meet nobody. (Use 'anybody' in place of 'nobody')

II. I hardly know somebody about you. (Use 'anybody' in place of 'somebody')

Rule 7: Negative words like **not/never** is not used with **deny, forbid, both, unless, until, lest, hardly, sacredly, rarely, seldom** and **too**.

Ex - I. She denied that she had not done anything wrong. (Delete 'Not')

II. Both of us are not going there. (×)

III. Neither of us is going there. (✓)

Rule 8: 1 Adverb 'as' can be used with - regard, describe, define, treat, view, know.

2 Adverb 'as' cannot - be used with - Name, elect, think, consider, call, appoint, make, choose.

Ex - I. I regard him my brother. (Add 'as' after him).

II. She is considered as the best - student of my class (Drop 'as' after 'considered')

Rule 9: 'Seldom or never', 'seldom, if ever', 'little or nothing', 'little, if anything' are correct but it is wrong to say 'seldom or ever' or 'little or anything'.

Ex - He seldom or never goes to see movies.

Rule 10: Verbs of sensation (Taste, Smell, feel, Appear, sound and look) should take adjective and not adverb after them.

Ex - I. I look honest
(Verb of sensation) (adjective)

II. I work honestly
(Ordinary Verb) (adverb)

III. I felt bad
(Verb of Sensation) (adjective)

Rule 11: Mainly, masterly, slovenly, friendly, orderly, gentlemanly, sickly, weekly, monthly are adjectives which must not be mistaken as adverbs just because they end in 'ly'.

Ex - He behaved friendly (×)

He behaved in a friendly manner. (✓)

Rule 12: To emphasize the adverb, it is used at the beginning of the sentence.

Ex - I. Off she goes.

II. Here comes the chief guest.

Rule 13: Adverb of time (always, never ever, often, seldom, sometimes) are used before the verbs that they modify. But if these adverbs come at the beginning of the sentence, the sentence takes inverted form which means the verb/helping verb at the beginning of the sentence.

Ex - I. Seldom he comes to Delhi. (×)

Seldom does he come to Delhi (✓)

II. Never I'll go there (×)

Never shall I go there (✓)

Exercise

Directions: Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical error in it. The error, if any, will be in one part of the sentence. The number of that part is the answer. If there is no error, the answer is '4' i.e. No error. (Ignore the errors of punctuation, if any).

1. I am absolutely confident (a)/that we are going to move forward, (b)/strongly. (c)/No error (d)
2. My brother has done (a)/and is still doing (b)/excellent work for his business. (c)/No error (d)
3. Sarika was popular with her classmates (a)/that she had always some (b)/people coming to her for advice. (c)/No error (d)
4. No sooner he had arrived home (a)/than he was asked (b)/to start on another journey. (c)/No error (d)
5. Columbus was the first man who invented (a)/America after his so many (b)/hazardous journeys. (c)/No error (d)
6. When I found she was (a)/there than his father came and started (b)/scolding him very loud. (c)/No error (d)
7. When I found she was (a)/too glad to meet me, I was lured to live (b)/with her for some days. (c)/No error (d)
8. I wrote yesterday a letter (a)/with the view to reminding her of her (b)/selection in our team. (c)/No error (d)
9. You will fail (a)/in the examination unless you (b)/work hardly. (c)/No error (d)
10. Even if I had (a)/the money I wouldn't (b)/buy a car now. (c)/No error (d)
11. No sooner did the thief see (a)/the policeman than (b)/he ran away. (c)/No error (d)
12. The best hotel of Kolkata (a)/when they stayed last month (b)/has been mentioned in this novel. (c)/No error (d)
13. The hall is too much small (a)/to accommodate (b)/all the guests. (c)/No error (d)
14. This book is too difficult rather (a)/for the juniors and (b)/rather too easy for the seniors. (c)/No error (d)
15. Our teacher will give (a)/a test (b)/in English tomorrow. (c)/No error (d)

16. Sanjay said that he had (a)/given five rupees (b)/to the child (c)/No error (d)
17. The secretary and the treasurer of our office (a)/were present in the meeting (b)/with their friends. (c)/No error (d)
18. The real important thing (a)/of our life is our livelihood (b)/which distinguishes us from animals. (c)/No error (d)
19. She is too much beautiful (a)/so most of the boys run after her and (b)/want to influence her. (c)/No error (d)
20. The taxi-driver who had come (a)/to receive us at the airport was speaking (b)/fluently French. (c)/No error (d)
21. John was exorbitantly paid (a)/ for how skillful she received (b)/ the visitors and entertained them. (c)/No error (d)
22. They were exceptional good (a)/ orators, so all of us (b)/ listened to them very attentively. (c)/ No error (d)
23. The amount which the company (a)/ has paid to the dependents of the dead worker (b)/ was fairly unjustified. (c)/ No error (d)
24. The imported articles which you sell are (a)/ enough costly to allow the pocket (b)/ of an ordinary man to buy them. (c)/ No error (d)
25. I met Anna about (a)/ two years ago and have (b)/ remembered her ever for. (c)/ No error (d)
26. The leaders of the striking (a)/ teachers called on the Chief Minister (b)/ for negotiation and returned happily. (c)/ No error (d)
27. Although he (a)/ only earns five hundred rupees a month (b)/ he manages to support his family. (c)/ No error (d)
28. All of them will execute (a)/ the plan so skillfully that their manager (b)/ will feel surprised. (c)/ No error (d)
29. Hardly She likes to hear my name (a)/ after the rift which occurred (b)/ between her and me. (c)/ No error (d)
30. She was fortunafely (a)/ not present on the rostrum when (b)/ the bomb exploded. (c)/ No error (d)
31. A man of fifty (a)/cannot be called (b)/as young. (c)/ No error (d)
32. He is being (a)/ very politely (b)/ for the reason best known to him. (c)/ No error (d)
33. He is tall enough (a)/to be selected as Sub Inspector (b)/in Delhi Police (c)/No error. (d)
34. A soldier is (a)/ taught never to (b)/fight cowardly (c)/ No error (d)
35. I am full of energy (a)/today because I (b)/soundly slept last night (c)/ No error. (d)
36. I did not know hardly (a)/anyone in the college (b)/ and so I felt lonely all the time (c)/No error. (d)

37. I have never seen (a)/ a coward man (b)/ like Sohan (c)/No error. (d)
38. I never remember (a)/to have met a more intelligent (b)/ man in my life (c)/ No error. (d)
39. I refused to accompany him (a)/because he was (b)/so boring (c)/ No error. (d)
40. Mangoes taste (a)/more sweetly than (b)/ any other fruit of this world (c)/ No error. (d)
41. My father (a) /is very quicker than (b)/I at Chess. (c)/No error (d)
42. She did her job (a)/ as better as she (b)/ could do (c)/ No error (d)
43. She does her (a)/ work good as she (b)/ is a trained nurse (c)/ No error (d)
44. She had barely (a)/ nothing to wear (b)/ when she came to me for help (c)/ No error (d)
45. It rained (a)/ like cats and dogs (b)/ throughout the night. (c)/ No error (d)
46. Though he was brave, (a)/he could not face the ups and downs (b)/of life manly (c)/No error. (d)
47. We must try (a)/to save our hardly (b)/earned money (c)/No error. (d)
48. Vijay could not scarcely conceal (a)/ his happiness (b)/at my resignation. (c)/No error (d)
49. When I read his biography, (a)/ I hardly found something (b)/in his character that I could admire
No error. (d)
50. When she received the good news, (a)/she ran straightly (b)/to call up her parents (c)/No error
51. You always (a)/come lately (b)/ to class (c)/ No error. (d)
52. You have (a)/acted nobler than (b)/all of us (c)/No error. (d)
53. You should have (a)/ sufficiently collateral (b)/ to pay back the loan. (c)/ No error (d)
54. She sounded (a)/very sadly after (b)/the death of her pet (c)/ No error (d)
55. Her speech was not clearly (a)/but we understood (b)/the underlying meaning (c)/No error (d)
56. All the pupils (a)/ stood up respectively (b)/ as the Guru entered the room. (c)/ No error (d)
57. The instructor (a)/scolded her always (b)/because she rarely reached (c)/tuition on time. No error
58. When I read his story, (a)/ I hardly found something, (b)/ in his character that (c), /could admire
error.
59. I yesterday came (a)/ to meet you (b)/ but you were (c)/ not present. No error (d)
60. We seldom or ever (a)/ go out these days (b)/ because it is too cold (c)/ now-a-days. No error. (d)

Solutions

1. (a) Use 'absolutely confident' in place of 'absolute confident'.
2. (d) No error.
3. (a) Use 'popular' in place of 'popularly'.
4. (a) Use 'No sooner had he' in place of 'No sooner he had'.
5. (a) Use 'discovered' in place of 'invented'.
6. (c) Use 'loudly' in place of 'loud'. Here 'loud' is used to modify "scold (verb)" so adverb 'loudly' must be used.
7. (b) Use 'very' in place of 'too'.
8. (a) Use 'I wrote a letter yesterday' in place of 'I wrote yesterday a letter'.
9. (c) Use 'work hard' in place of 'work hardly'.
10. (d) No error.
11. (d) No error.
12. (b) Use 'where' in place of 'when' because 'when' is used for 'time' and 'where' is used for 'place'.
13. (a) Use 'too small' in place of 'too much small'.
14. (a) Use 'rather too difficult' in place of 'too difficult rather'.
15. (d) No error.
16. (d) No error.
17. (d) No error.
18. (a) Use 'The really important thing' in place of 'The real important thing'. 'Real' is an adjective and 'really' is an adverb.

A real important thing.	(x)
A really important thing.	(✓)
A beautiful built/made box.	(x)
A beautifully built/made box.	(✓)
A sweet song.	(✓)
A sweetly song.	(x)
19. (a) Use 'very beautiful' in place of 'too much beautiful'. too much + Noun is used in Negative Sense.

Example-

She runs too much fast.	(x)
She runs very fast.	(✓)
Rashmi is too much attractive.	(x)
Rashmi is very attractive.	(✓)
But,	
It is too much pain.	(✓)
20. (c) It should be "French fluently" in place of "fluently French".
21. (b) Use 'skilfully' in place of 'skilful'.

22. (a) Use 'exceptionally' before 'exceptional'.
23. (c) Use 'quite' in place of 'fairly'. Only 'good habits' can be expressed after using the word 'fairly'. But 'good' and 'bad' expressions can be used in case of 'quite' and 'rather'.
24. (b) Use 'enough' after 'costly'.
25. (c) Use 'since' in place of 'for'.
26. (d) No error.
27. (b) Use 'only' before 'five hundred rupees'.
28. (d) No error.
29. (a) Use 'does' after 'hardly' and use 'like' in place of 'likes'.
30. (a) 'Fortunately' must be used at the starting of sentence.
31. (c) Remove As
32. (b) Use Polite Instead of politely
33. (a) we use ENOUGH after adjective, so the correct is >> he is enough tall
34. (c) cowardly is adjective, here we need to use adverb, as here verb is fight, so use "in a cowardly manner"
35. (c) slept soundly is right
36. (a) DONT USE NOT WITH NEGATIVE WORDS, so here hardly is negative word, remove not, I kne
hardly anyone is correct
37. (b) man is noun, so adjective will be used here, use COWARDLY
38. (a) NEVER will be used after REMEMBER.
39. (c) So. After SO there must be THAT, use VERY instead of So
40. (b) taste is verb of sensation, so after it use adjective not adverb, so change SWEETLY to sweet
41. (b) with comparative degree use much not VERY. so much quicker
42. (b) AS....AS. Takes positive degree. so use AS WELL AS
43. (b) GOOD is adjective, use here adverb so use WELL
44. (b) NEVER use negative word with barely, so remove nothing
45. (b) Remove Like
46. (c) use MANFULLY, manly is adjective which means brave or strong.
47. (b) use hard earned money
48. (a) scarcely is negative word, so remove NOT
49. (b) with hardly we use anything
50. (b) straightly, there is no word like this, straight is both adjective and adverb, use STRAIGHT
51. (b) lately means currently late means simply takes more time than usual
52. (b) more nobly will be right, nobler is wrong.
53. (b) collateral is noun, no use adjective, sufficient is right word
54. (b) very sad is right, because sound is verb of sensation, so use adjective
55. (a) Use Clear instead of clearly
56. (b) change respectively to respectfully.
57. (b) It should be 'always scolded her'
58. (b) Anything should be used in place of something
59. (a) Came yesterday in place of yesterday came
60. (a) Never should be used in place of ever.

Preposition

A preposition is a word which generally precedes a noun or pronoun and expresses a relation between the noun or pronoun and other words or elements in the sentence.

For Ex - (a) There is a cat **on** the table

(b) All the boys are **in** the room.

Note: Sometimes, Prepositions are placed at the end of a sentence and not before a noun/pronoun.

For Ex - Amit has much to be sad about who they taking to?

There are four types of Prepositions:

- (1) Prepositions of Time : in, on, since, for, at, from, between, during, after, within, till, until, from etc.
- (2) Prepositions of position/place : between, among, amongst, amid, amidst, in, at on, beside, besides, etc.
- (3) Prepositions of Directions : along, across, against, up, down, to, towards, for, from, at, on etc.
- (4) Other Prepositions' with, without, by, off, of, around, about, besides, except, etc.

USES OF SOME IMPORTANT PREPOSITIONS

1. UP - Above - On - Over

(i) **UP:** As a preposition, 'up' is used to talk about a higher position or a movement to a higher position.

For Ex - He followed his teacher up the stairs.

(ii) **Above:** 'Above' is used to denote a higher position or level.

For Ex - His marks are above eighty percent.

(iii) **On:** 'On' is used to denote the position of something which is in a position above something else and is touching it.

For Ex - The book is on the table

Note: On is also used before a 'Day' or 'Date'.

For Ex - I will visit him on Monday.

India became republic on 26th January 1950

If there is an article before a 'means of transport', 'On' is used.

For Ex - On a bus/train/ship/cycle.

(iv) **Over:** 'Over' is used to denote the position of something which is above something else and is covering it.

For Ex - I put my hands over my eyes.

2. Down - Below - Beneath - Under.

(i) **Down:** Down is used to denote a lower position, from a higher one.

For Ex - She bent down to look under the car.

(ii) **Below:** 'Below' means 'in a lower position (than)'.

For Ex - My marks are below average

(iii) **Beneath:** 'Beneath' means 'directly underneath (something)'

For Ex - There is a pipeline beneath the road.

(iv) **Under:** 'Under' is used to denote a position of something which is below something else and is often covered by it.

For Ex - Doctor put the thermometer under my tongue.

3. **Between - Among - Amongst.**

- (i) **Between:** 'Between' is used to denote the space between two separate places, people, or objects.
For Ex - My car is parked between a bus and a truck.
- (ii) **Among:** 'Among' means 'In the middle of a number of (more than two) things.'
For Ex - He could not find even a single familiar face among the crowd.
- (iii) **Amongst:** 'Among' and 'Amongst' mean the same. Though they are bit different in usage.
For Ex - The sweets which udit had bought were distributed among the poor children.
Amongst is used before a vowel sound, while among is used before a consonant sound.
For Ex - Among them. Amongst US.

4. **Beside - Besides - Except.**

- (i) **Beside:** Beside means 'next to'.
For Ex - Go and sit beside her.
- (ii) **Besides:** Besides means 'in addition to'.
For Ex - They have a lots of things in common besides their profession.
- (iii) **Except:** Except is used before a noun about which the statement is not true.
Except means 'apart from'
For Ex - Everyone had attended the class except Rohit.

5. **For and Since**

- (i) **For:** 'For' is used to denote period of time.
For Ex - I have been sleeping for four hours.
For is also used to denote 'purpose'.
For Ex - These seats are reserved for ladies only.
- (ii) **Since:** 'Since' is used to denote a point of time.
For Ex - I have been sleeping since four P.M.
'Since' is also used to 'denote' 'reason'.
For Ex - Since I was injured, I did not play the match.

6. **Across and Through.**

- (i) **Across:** 'Across' means 'from one side to the other of something with clear boundaries'.
For Ex - Across a road.
Across a bridge.
- (ii) **Through:** 'Through' is used to indicate the movement from one end to the other.
For Ex - They ran swiftly through the woods.

7. **On - Upon - Onto**

- (i) **On:** 'On' is used to denote the position of something which is in a position above something and is touching.
For Ex - My Pen is on the bed.
Note: 'On' denotes 'Position'
- (ii) **Upon:** 'Upon' is used to denote 'On' in a more formal term, especially in abstract senses.
For. Ex - It was based upon two principles
- (iii) **Onto:** 'Onto' is used to indicate movement into or on a particular place.
For Ex - She slipped as she stepped onto the floor.
Note: Upon and Onto are used to denote Motion.
For Ex - The cat jumped upon the platform.
They climbed onto the summit.

8. **In - Into - within.**
- (i) **In:** 'In' is used to denote the position of something which is surrounded or closed off by something.
For Ex - Neelam is in the room.
 - (ii) **Into:** 'Into' is used to denote movement inside or middle of something.
For Ex - Get into the bed.
 - (iii) **Within:** 'Within' is used to denote time or position which is inside the range or limits of a particular period of time or distance.
For Ex - I will complete this work within two hours.
My house is within a mile of the station.
9. **By and With.**
- (i) **By:** 'By' is used to indicate the person or thing which does something.
For Ex - I was cheated by him.
Note: By is also used before mode of transportation when it comes with words like 'go', 'come', 'arrive', etc.
For Ex - I go to school by bus.
 - (ii) **With:** 'With' is used before something which has been used as means or equipment to do something.
For Ex - Rajesh shot the tiger with a rifle.
10. **Before and In front of**
- (i) **Before:** is used for a period of time which is earlier than the thing/time mentioned.
For Ex - She came before me.
 - (ii) **In front of:** 'In front of' means 'directly ahead of '(something)'.
For Ex - Do not stand in front of me.
11. **At and in**
- (i) **At:** 'At' is used to denote an exact position or a particular place (or time)
For Ex - I am at my home.
The school starts at 8 : 30 A.M.
 - (ii) **In:** 'In' is used when we want to describe a part or a period of time.
For Ex - I am going to Mumbai in July.
I was born in 1993.
12. **To and Towards**
- (i) **To:** 'To' is used to denote 'destination'
For Ex - I am going to America.
She is going to temple.
 - (ii) **Towards:** 'Towards' means 'In the direction of'.
For Ex - Isha is going towards the college
Rajeev is going towards the temple.
Note: In the above example, 'College' and 'Temple' need not to be the destination of 'Isha' and 'Rajeev'
13. **Inspite of and Despite.**
- (i) **Inspite of:** 'In Spite of' means 'without being affected by the particular factor mentioned'
For Ex - In spite of being late, he was allowed to enter the class.
 - (ii) **Despite:** 'Despite' and 'In spite of' mean the same. Never use the preposition 'of' with 'Despite'
For Ex - Despite being late, he was allowed to enter the class.

14. Since and from.

(i) **Since:** 'Since' is used to denote a point of time in the past.

For Ex - I had been talking to him since December.

She has been teaching in this school since January.

(ii) **From:** 'From' is used to denote a point of time/distance at which something starts and then continues.

For Ex - The price of milk will rise by Rs.10 from Monday.

The school remains open from 8 : 30 a.m. to 2 : 30 p.m.

Note: The point of time denoted by 'from' can be in past as well as in future.

For Ex - I will start going to school from next Monday.

Note: From is also used to show 'separation'

For Ex - The boy fell from the terrace.

15. Of and off

(i) **Of:** 'Of' is used to denote relation

For Ex - Sanya is a friend of mine.

The leg of this table is broken.

(ii) **Off:** 'Off' is used to denote separation

For Ex - She fell off the bed.

Ashish took his jacket off.

16. During and for

(i) **During:** 'During' is used to express the period of time in which something happens.

For Ex - I was in Delhi during the winter

I went to Shimla during my vacation.

(ii) **For:** 'For' expresses how long something lasts.

For Ex - They were on leave for two weeks.

Appropriate Prepositions with different parts of speech

Nouns Followed by Preposition 'of'

Abhorrence of

Abhorrence of

Charge of

Doubt of

Failure of

Proof of

Want of

Assurance of

Distrust of

Experience of

Observance of

Result of

Covetous of

Deprived of

Devoid of

Distrustful of

Easy of

Fearful of

Greedy of

Heedless of

informed of

Irrespective of

Lavish of

Productive of

Regardless of

Sensible of

Slow of

Sure of

Tolerant of

defrauded of

desirous of

Diffident of

Dullo of

Envious of

Fond of

Guilty of

Ignorant of

Innocent of

Lame of

Negligent of

Proud of

Sanguine of

Sick of

Subversive

Suspicious of

Vain of

Void of
Worthy of
Acquit of
Boats of
Despair of
Disapprove of
Divest of
Heal of
Repent of

Nouns followed by Preposition 'for'

Affection for
Anxiety for
Appetite for
Blame for
Capacity for
Compensation for
Craving for
Esteem for
Fondness for
Leisure for
Match for
Need for
Partiality for
Pity for
Pretext for
Remorse for

Adjectives following preposition 'for'

Anxious for
Conspicuous for
Designed for
Eager for
Eminent for
Good for
Notorious for
Prepared for
Qualified for
Sorry for
Useful for

Verb Followed by Prepositions 'for'

Atone for
Care for
Feel for
Mourn for

Weary of

Beware of

'of'

Beware of

Complain of

Die of

Dispose of

Dream of

Judge of

Teste of

'for'

Ambition for

Apology for

Aptitude for

Candidate for

Compassion for

Contempt for

Desire for

Fitness for

Guarantee of

Liking for

Motive for

Opportunity for

Passion for

Predilection for

Relish for

Reputation for

Celebrated for

Customary for

Destined for

Eligible for

Fit for

Grateful for

Penitent for

proper for

Ready for

Sufficient for

Zealous for

Canvass for

Clamour for

Hope for

Pine for

Start for

Sue for

Yearn for

Verbs followed by preposition 'on'

Comment on

Deliberate on

Determine on

Embark on

Enlarge

insist on

Resolve on

Trample on

Nouns followed by Preposition 'to'

Access to

Allegiance to

Antidote to

Approach to

Attachement

Concession to

Disklike to

Enmity to

Incentive to

Invitation to

Liniency to

Limit to

Obedience to

Postscript to

Reference to

Resemblance to

Submissions to

Temptation to

Adjectives Followed by Preposition 'to'

Abhorrent to

Accessible

Incidental to

Indebted to

Inimical to

Injured to

Favourable to

Immaterial to

Indigenous to

Limited to

Loval to

Natural to

Stipulate for

Wish for

Decide on

Depend on

Dwell on

Encroach on

Impose on

Intrude on

Subsist on

Accession to

Alternative to

Antipathy to

Assent to

Attention to

Disgrace to

Encouragement to

Exception to

Indifference to

Key to

Likeness to

Menace to

Objection to

Preface to

Repugnance to

Sequel to

Sequel to

Traitor to

Acceptable to

Impertinent to

Indifferent to

indulgent to

Insensible to

Irrelevant to

Hurtful to

Imervious to

Liable to

Lost to

Material to

Necessary to

Obedient to
Offensive to
Painful to
Peculiar to
Pledged to
Prejudicial to
Prior to
Reduced to
Relevant to
Responsible to
Sacred to
Suitable to
Supplementary to
True to

Verbs Followed by Preposition 'to'

Accede to
Adhere to
Allude to
Appoint to
Aspire to
Attain to
Attribute to
Conduce to
Consent to
Lead to
Object to
Prefer to
Refer to
Stoop to
Surrender to
Yield to

Adjectives followed Preposition 'in'

Absorbed in
Accomplished in
Assiduous in
Bigoted in
Defective in
Experienced in
Enveloped in
Foiled in
Implicated in
Involved in
Proficnet in
Temperate in

Obliged to
Opposite to
Partial to
Pertinent to
Preferable to
Profitable to
Prone to
Related to
Repugnant to
Restricted to
Subject to
Suited to
Tantamount to

Adapt to
Allot to
Appologize to
Ascribe to
Assent to
Attend to
Belong to
Conform to
Listen to
Listen to
occur to
Revert to
Succumb to
Succumb to
Testify to

Abstemious in
Accurate in
Backward in
Correct in
Deficient in
Deligent in
Fertile in
Honest in
Interested in
Lax in
Remiss in
Versed in

Verbs Followed by Preposition 'in'

Involve in
Acquiesce in
Delight in
Enlist in
Fall in
Increase in
Persevere in

persist in
Dabble in
Employ in
Excel in
Excel in
Indulge in

Nouns Followed by Prepositions 'with'

Acquaintance with
Bargain with
Conformity
Intercourse with
Relations with

Alliance with
Compromise with
Enmity with
Intimacy with

Adjectives followed preposition 'with'

Acquainted with
Beset with
Compatible with
Consistent with
Contended with
Conversant with
Delighted with
Disgusted with
Endowed with
Fired with
Infaturated with
Infested with
Invested with
Popular with
Satiated with
Touched with

Afficted with
Busy with
Compliant with
Contemporary with
Contrasted with
Convulsed with
Deluged with
Drenched with
Fatigued with
Gifted with
Infected with
Inspired with
Overcome with
Replete with
Satisfied with

Verb Followed by Preposition 'with'

Associate with
Clash with
Comply with
Condole with
Correspond with
Deluge with
Dispense with
Grapple with
Intrigue with
Part with
Remonstrate with
Sympathisize with
Trifle with

Bear with
Coincinde with
Condone with
Cope with
Credit with
Disagree with
Fill with
Expostulate with
Meddle with
Quarrel with
Side with
Vie with

Verbs Followed by Preposition 'from'

Abstain from
Cease from
Derogate from
Detract from
Differ from
Dissent from
Emerge from
Exclude from
Prevent from
Protect from
Recover from

Alight from
Debar from
Desist from
Deviate from
Digress from
Elicit from
Escape from
Preserve from
Prohibit from
Recoil from
Refrain from

Nouns Followed by Preposition 'from'

Respite from
Abstinence from
Deliverance from
Digression from
Exemption from

Inference from
Cessation from
Descent from
Escape from

We now present a list of some Nouns and Appropriate Prepositions.

A List of Nouns and Appropriate Prepositions

1. Abstinence **from** wine.
2. Ability **for** or **in** some work.
3. Abundance of wealth.
4. Accession **to** the throne.
5. Access **to** person or place.
6. Accomplice **with** a person in a crime.
7. Accusation **of** forgery.
8. In accordance **with** some rule.
9. Affinity **with** something.
10. Adherence **to** a rule.
11. Affection **for** somebody.
12. Affinity **between** two things.
13. Alliance **with** a person or state.
14. Allusion **to** something.
15. Alternative **to** a method/something
16. Analogy **of** one thing **with** another.
17. Analogy **between** things.
18. Animosity **against** somebody.
19. Antidote **against** infection.
20. Antidote **to** some poison.
21. Apprehension **of** danger.
22. Approach **to** (step towards) anything.
23. Arrival **in** a country.
24. Arrival **at** a place.
25. Assault **on** a person or thing.
26. Attack (vt +) somebody.
27. Attack (n/c) **on** a country.
28. Attraction **to** or towards a thing
29. Authority **over** a person.
30. Authority **on** a subject
31. Aversion **to** a person or thing.
32. Candidate **for** a post.
33. Care **for** somebody's safety.
34. Care **for** his health.
35. Charge **of** murder.
36. Charge **with** theft.
37. Claim **on** or **against** somebody.
38. Claim **to** property.
39. Compact **with** a person.
40. Comment **on** something.
41. Comparison **of** somebody **with** somebody.
42. **By/in** comparison **with**.
43. Compassion **for** somebody.
44. Competition **with** somebody.
45. Competition **for** something.
46. Complicity **in** a crime.
47. Compliance **with** a request.
48. Condemnation **to** death.
49. Confidence **in** somebody.
50. Conformity **with** anyone's views.
51. Conformity **to** rule.
52. Compensation **for** a loss.
53. Connection **with** a person or thing.
54. Connivance **at** anyone's fault.
55. Consciousness **of** guilt.
56. Consideration **for** somebody.
57. Contact **with** somebody/something.
58. Contempt **for** a person or thing.
59. A contrast **with** a person.
60. A contrast **to** a person or thing.
61. Controversy **on** or **about** something.
62. Contribution **to** a fund.
63. Contribution **towards** some project.
64. Conversation **with** somebody.
65. Decision **on** some case.
66. Decision **of** some dispute.
67. Decline **of** an empire.

68. Decline in moral/price.
69. Degradation from rank.
70. Delight in music / in something.
71. Descent from ancestors.
72. Desire for wealth.
73. Desirous (Adj.) of something.
74. Disgust at meanness.
75. Dislike to a person or thing.
76. Distaste for mathematics/something.
77. Doubt of or about a thing.
78. Duty to a person.
79. Encroachment on / upon one's rights.
80. Engagement with somebody.
81. Entrance into a place.
82. Enmity with somebody.
83. Esteem for somebody.
84. Exception to a rule.
85. (Make) an exception of somebody or something.
86. Excuse for a mistake.
87. Failure of electricity.
88. Failure of somebody in something.
89. Faith in somebody or something.
90. Familiarity with a person or thing.
91. Freedom from care.
92. Freedom of action.
93. Glance at a person or thing.
94. Glance over a wide surface.
95. Gratitude for a thing.
96. Gratitude to a person.
97. Grief at an event.
98. Grief for a person.
99. Guess at the truth / something.
100. Harmony with anything.
101. Hatred of or for somebody.
102. Hatred of a thing.
103. Heir to some property.
104. Heir of somebody.
105. Hindrance to something.
106. Hint at some reward.
107. Hope for better a luck.
108. Hostility to a person or cause.
109. Identity with somebody/something.
110. Immersion into water.
111. Implication in this crime.
112. Implication on someone.
113. Imputation against somebody.
114. Incentive to a worker.
115. Inclination for sport/something.
116. Indifference to help others.
117. Indulgence to a beautiful woman.
118. Influence over or with somebody.
119. Influence on decision of wife.
120. Inquiry into circumstances/a case.
121. Insight into something somebody's character.
122. Intercession with a superior.
123. Intercession for a friend.
124. Jurisdiction in a lawsuit.
125. Justification of or for crime.
126. Key to understanding of the problem.
127. Liability to an illness.
128. Libel against his character.
129. Liking for non-vegetarian / something.
130. Longing for luxury / something.
131. Lust for life / something.
132. Malice against an enemy.
133. Neglect of duty.
134. Neglect of doing a thing.
135. Nomination of a member.
136. Nomination to a position.
137. Opportunity for going abroad / doing something.
138. Partnership in a thing.
139. Power over a person.
140. Precaution against infection.
141. Preface to a book.
142. Preference for something.
143. Preparation for examination/something.
144. Proof against somebody.
145. Proof of guilt.
146. Qualification for a post.
147. Quarrel with somebody/something.
148. Readiness in responding.
149. Readiness for journey.
150. Reference to a person or thing.
151. In regard to that matter.
152. Regard for a person.
153. Relation between two things.
154. Relation with somebody.

155. Remonstrance **against** somebody's conduct.
156. Remonstrance **with** somebody.
157. Reply **to** a query / a person.
158. Request **for** a thing.
159. Resemblance **to** a person or thing.
160. In respect **of** some quality.
161. Rivalry **with** a person. 5011°
162. Rival **in** something.
163. Search **for** a **after** wealth.
164. In search of wealth / a job etc.
165. Share **in** the property / something.
166. Share **with** somebody.
167. Sin **against** God./ mankind/humanity.
168. Sympathy **with** or for somebody.
169. Temptation **to** evil.
170. Temptation **in** diet.
171. Trespass **against** the law.
172. Warrant **for** somebody's arrest.
173. **With** a view **to**.
174. Witness **of** or **to** a case.
175. Wonder **at** his behaviour/something.

SOME VERBS & APPROPRIATE PREPOSITIONS

1. Abound **in** or **with** something.
2. Accrue **to** somebody.
3. Accure **from** something.
4. Accuse somebody **of** cheft.
5. Acquit a person **of** all charges/all complicity.
6. Acquit a person **in** a crime.
7. Adapt **to** new surroundings.
8. Adhere **to** a plan / a rule / a principle.
9. Agree **to** a proposal.
10. Agree **with** a person.
11. Agree **on** some matter.
12. Aim **at** a target.
13. Aim **at** doing something.
14. Alight **from** a bus/a train etc.
15. Allude **to** a fact. 16. Answer **to** a description.
17. Answer **for** misconduct/something.
18. Apologise **to** somebody.
19. Apologise **for** something.
20. Appeal **to** the judge/something.
21. Appeal **against** a sentence.
22. Appeal **for** mercy/something.
23. Apply **to** a person.
24. Apply **for** some post/something.
25. Appoint **to** a post.
26. Argue **with** a person **for** or **against** a point.
27. Arrive **at** a conclusion.
28. Arrive **at** a station/a place.
29. Arrive **in** a country.
30. Ask **for** assistance.
31. Ask **of** or **from** somebody.
32. Associate **with** a group.
33. Blame a person **for** something.
34. Blush **at** one's own mistake.
35. Blush **for** somebody who is at fault.
36. Border **on** a place.
37. Borrow **of** or **from** a friend/somebody.
38. Break the news **of** somebody's death.
39. Break **through** restraint.
40. Break ill news **to** a friend/**to** somebody.
41. Break (dissolve partnership) **with** somebody.
42. Bring a thing **to** light.
43. Bring a thing **under** notice.
44. Burst **upon** (suddenly invade) a country.
45. Burst **into** laughter.
46. Burst **into** tears.
47. Call **on** a person.
48. Call **for** (demand, require) something.
49. Call something **in** (order or request the return of).
50. Canvass **for** (support) votes.
51. **Care for** (attach value to) to a person or thing.
52. Care **about** (feel interest, anxiety or sorrow) something.
53. Challenge a man **to** combat / fight.
54. Charge a man **with** a crime.
55. Charge payment **to** a person.
56. Coincide **with** one's opinion.
57. Come **about** (happen).
58. Come **across** (to meet suddenly).
59. Come **after** somebody (fallow).
60. Come **into** fashion.
61. Come **by** something (obtain by effort).
62. Come **of** a rich family.
63. Commence **with** a thing.
64. Communicate a thing **to** somebody.
65. Communicate **with** somebody.
66. Compare somebody **with** somebody.

67. Compare something **with** something (similar).
68. Compare **to** (dissimilar things).
69. Compensate **for** loss.
70. Compete **with** somebody **for** a prize something.
71. Complain **to** somebody.
72. Complain **against** somebody.
73. Complain **of/about** something.
74. Conceal facts **from** somebody.
75. Concede **to** some demand.
76. Concur **with** a person.
77. Concur **in** an opinion.
78. Condemn a person **to** death.
79. Conform **to** a norm.
80. Conform **with** one's opinion.
81. Congratulate somebody **on** his success.
82. Consult **with** (discuss with) one's friends.
83. Consult a person/a lawyer/a map/a dictionary (take advice, get information etc.)
84. Contribute **to** a fund.
85. Converse **with** a person about a thing.
86. Cope **with** situation.
87. Correspond **with** a person (write).
88. Correspond **to** something (agree).
89. Cure a man **of** a disease.
90. Cure (n/u) **for** a disease.

Exercise

Directions: Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical error in it. The error, if any, be in one part of the sentence. The number of that part is the answer. If there is no error, the answer is '4' i.e. error. (Ignore the errors of punctuation, if any).

1. We should always (a)/ listen the advice of (b)/our well wishers. (c)/ No error (d)
2. He closely resembles (a)/ with his father (b)/ in facial features. (c)/ No error (d)
3. While taking examinations (a)/ , always write (b)/ with dark ink. (c)/ No error (d)
4. The Insurance Company (a)/ has promised to compensate (b)/ the damage to my house. (c)/ No error
5. You must revise (a)/ your answer sheet (b)/ again. (c)/ No error (d)
6. He suffered (a)/ from heart attack (b)/ last year. (c)/ No error (d)
7. Everybody complains (a)/against callous treatment (b)/ of the police. (c)/ No error (d)
8. She is very popular (a)/ among her friends (b)/ and relatives. (c)/ No error (d)
9. The highway robbers (a)/ robbed all their (b)/ belongings. (c)/ No error (d)
10. Would you please (a)/ ring me up (b)/ on next Monday? (c)/ No error (d)
11. Don't quarrel (a)/ on trifles (b)/ with your friends. (c)/ No error (d)
12. My house comprises (a)/of five rooms and is spacious (b)/ enough for two families. (c)/ No error (d)
13. There is no cause (a)/of anxiety (b)/ about his health. (c)/ No error (d)
14. Children should be (a)/ taught to write (b)/ by a fountain pen. (c)/ No error (d)
15. Pakistan invaded (a)/on India (b)/ in 1965. (c)/ No error (d)
16. His employers (a)/ were compelled to (b)/ dispense his services. (c)/ No error (d)
17. On Diwali he will (a)/ order for a new (b)/ pair of shoes. (c)/ No error (d)
18. You should at least (a)/ congratulate your friend for (b)/ his grand success in the elections. (c)/ No error (d)
19. The accused was bound (a)/ by a chain and (b)/ taken to prison. (c)/ No error (d)
20. My father has assured (a)/ me to present me a new (b)/ scooter on my next birthday. (c)/ No error (d)
21. In a democratic society no (a)/ one should be discriminated (b)/ because of caste and creed. (c)/ No error (d)
22. A summons (a)/ was served to (b)/ him last week. (c)/ No error (d)

23. As a responsible officer (a)/you should dispense with justice (b)/to the poor and the needy (c)/No error (d)
24. Whenever she goes (a)/ out her chaperon (b)/ accompanies with her. (c)/ No error (d)
25. The meeting began (a)/ at about 2 p.m. and he (b)/ had arrived quite earlier. (c)/ No error (d)
26. The news of the (a)/ Prime Minister's death spread (b)/ in all over the country. (c)/ No error (d)
27. He always travelled (a)/ in second class with a view (b)/ to understanding the pulse of his countrymen. (c)/ No error (d)
28. She was admitted in the (a)/ hospital when she met (b)/ with a serious accident. (c)/ No error (d)
29. After his death, his wife (a)/ and children died (b)/ of misery and starvation. (c)/ No error (d)
30. While going to college (a)/, I met my old friends (b)/ in the way. (c)/ No error (d)

Direction (31-60) Fill in the blanks with suitable alternatives:

31. He will stay here _____ Monday.
(a) by (b) at (c) to (d) till
32. The doctor gave me a prescription _____ my cough.
(a) for (b) with (c) at (d) to
33. Suganya was born _____ Trichy.
(a) on (b) in (c) at (d) from
34. The earth goes _____ the sun.
(a) to (b) on (c) round (d) over
35. See you _____ Saturday morning.
(a) at (b) on (c) by (d) of
36. Fuel is a source _____ energy.
(a) of (b) in (c) for (d) over
37. There are national stadiums _____ some parts of the country.
(a) in (b) of (c) at (d) over
38. Petrol is sold _____ the liter.
(a) by (b) on (c) at (d) from
39. When do you take _____ your wrist watch?
(a) of (b) off (c) out (d) on
40. The bridge will be finished _____ two months' time.
(a) by (b) since (c) in (d) for
41. I waited _____ the bus stop for ten minutes.
(a) at (b) in (c) on (d) for
42. Snehil was very busy _____ the afternoon.
(a) on (b) in (c) at (d) with
43. I look forward _____ meeting your next month.
(a) at (b) for (c) to (d) with
44. The weather is pleasant here _____ the spring.
(a) at (b) on (c) in (d) as

45. It is very warm. I am going to take _____ my scarf.
(a) off (b) out (c) of (d) for
46. I last saw her _____ the car park.
(a) in (b) of (c) at (d) on
47. There's a good restaurant _____ the Mount Road.
(a) between (b) in (c) on (d) at
48. Let me help you _____ your cleaning.
(a) at (b) in (c) on (d) with
49. My father died three years ago _____ a sudden heart attack.
(a) from (b) on (c) at (d) by
50. Mrs. Amit was very good _____ sewing and knitting and she was always well dressed.
(a) by (b) for (c) at (d) of
51. It takes about five minutes to walk _____ the bridge.
(a) over (b) to (c) at (d) till
52. My father takes a nap _____ dinner.
(a) after (b) with (c) at (d) on
53. Listen! I think there is someone _____ the front door.
(a) at (b) on (c) with (d) in
54. Our village lies _____ two high mountains.
(a) among (b) in (c) between (d) over
55. How do you get _____ home to your school?
(a) at (b) from (c) to (d) into
56. Mike is sitting _____ the desk _____ front of the door.
(a) at / at (b) on / on (c) in / on (d) at / in
57. His office is _____ the second floor to the building.
(a) at (b) on (c) in (d) of
58. Galileo was also interested _____ astronomy.
(a) in (b) on (c) at (d) for
59. In which part _____ the head do you get the pain?
(a) of (b) on (c) in (d) over
60. There is something very attractive _____ him.
(a) in (b) about (c) by (d) with

Solutions

- | | |
|--|---------|
| 1. Use 'to' after 'Listen'. | 31. (d) |
| 2. Remove 'with'. | 32. (a) |
| 3. Use 'in' in place of 'with'. | 33. (b) |
| 4. Use 'compensate me for damage'. | 34. (c) |
| 5. Remove 'again'. | 35. (b) |
| 6. Remove 'from'. | 36. (a) |
| 7. Use 'of' in place of 'against'. | 37. (a) |
| 8. Use 'with' in place of 'among'. | 38. (a) |
| 9. Use 'robbed them all of the belongings'. | 39. (b) |
| 10. Remove 'on'. | 40. (c) |
| 11. Use 'over' in place of 'on'. | 41. (a) |
| 12. Remove 'of'. | 42. (b) |
| 13. Use 'for' in place of 'of'. | 43. (c) |
| 14. Use 'with' after 'write'. | 44. (c) |
| 15. Remove 'on'. | 45. (a) |
| 16. Use 'with' after 'dispense'. | 46. (a) |
| 17. Remove 'for' after 'order'. | 47. (c) |
| 18. Use 'on' in place of 'for'. | 48. (d) |
| 19. Use 'bound with' in place of 'bound by'. | 49. (a) |
| 20. Use 'with' after 'me'. | 50. (c) |
| 21. Use 'against' after 'discriminated'. | 51. (b) |
| 22. Use 'on' in place of 'to'. | 52. (a) |
| 23. Remove 'with' after 'dispense'. | 53. (a) |
| 24. Remove 'with' after 'accompanies'. | 54. (c) |
| 25. Use 'began at 2 p.m./about 2 p.m.' Don't use both of these prepositions. | 55. (b) |
| 26. Remove 'in' after 'spread'. | 56. (d) |
| 27. Remove 'in' after 'travelled'. | 57. (b) |
| 28. Use 'to' in place of 'in'. | 58. (a) |
| 29. Use 'from' in place of 'of'. | 59. (a) |
| 30. Use 'on' in place of 'in'. | 60. (b) |

Conjunction

A conjunction is a word or a group of words that joins words, phrases, sentences or clauses etc. **and, but, or, nor, for, yet, so, although, because, since, unless, when, while, where** etc.
For Ex - I bought some mangoes **and** oranges.

Give me a pen **or** a pencil.

The above mentioned bold words are joining words and are called conjunctions. In the first sentence above the conjunction '**and**' joins two nouns ('mangoes' and 'oranges'). In the second sentence conjunction '**or**' connects two noun phrases.

Kinds of Conjunction: There are three kinds of conjunctions

- Coordinating Conjunction
- Subordinate Conjunction
- Correlative Conjunction

Coordinating Conjunction: Coordinating conjunctions (called coordinators) join words, phrases (which are similar in importance and grammatical structure) or independent clauses.

Coordinating conjunctions are short words i.e. **and, but, or, nor, for, so, yet**.

Coordination conjunction joins two equal parts of a sentence,

- Word + word
- Phrase + phrase
- Clause + clause
- Independent clause + independent clause.

Examples.

Word + word: She likes tea and coffee.

Phrase + phrase: He may be in the room or on the roof.

Clauses + clause: What you eat and what you drink affect your health.

Independent clause + independent clause: The cat jumped over the mouse and the mouse ran away.

In the following examples, coordinating conjunctions join two words of same importance.

She likes pizza **and** cake. (pizza **and** cake)

I bought a table **and** a chair. (table **and** chair)

He may come by bus **or** car. (bus **or** car)

In the following examples, conjunction joins two independent clauses. **Independent clause** is a clause which can stand alone as a sentence and have complete thought on its own. See the following examples

I called him **but** he didn't pick up the phone.

I advised him to quit smoking **but** he didn't act upon my advice.

He became ill **so** he thought he should go to a doctor.

He shouted for help **but** nobody helped her.

He wants to become a doctor **so** he is studying Biology.

Coordinating conjunctions always come between the words or clauses that they join. If both clauses have same subjects, the subject of 2nd clause may not be written again. See the following examples

She worked hard **and** succeeded.

The player stopped **and** kicked the ball.

He became ill **but** didn't go to doctor.

Marry opened the book **and** started to study.

Subordinating Conjunctions: Subordinating conjunctions (called subordinators) join subordinate clause (dependent clause) to main clause. e.g. **although, because, if, before, how, once, since, till, until, when, where, whether, while, after, no matter how, provided that, as soon as, even if.**

Main clause + Subordinate clause
Subordinate clause + Main clause

Subordinate clause is combination of words (subject and verb) which cannot stand alone as a complete sentence. Subordinate clause is also called dependent clause because it is dependent on main clause. Subordinate clause usually starts with relative pronoun (which, who, that, whom etc). Subordinate clause gives more information in relation to main clause to complete the thought. Subordinating conjunction joins subordinate clause to main clause. Subordinating conjunction always come before the subordinate clause, no matter the subordinate clause is before main clause or after the main clause.

Examples.

He does not go to school **because** he is ill.

I will call you **after** I reach my home.

I bought some cookies **while** I was coming from my office.

They played football **although** it was raining.

Although it was raining, they played foot ball.

As far as I know, this exam is very difficult.

I have gone to every concert **since** I have lived in New York.

You can get high grades in exam **provided that** you work hard for it.

Correlative Conjunction:

These are paired conjunctions which join words, phrases or clauses which have reciprocal or complementary relationship.

The most commonly used correlative conjunctions are as follows

Either ... or

Neither ... nor

Whether ... or

Both ... and

Not only ... but also

Examples.

Neither John **nor** Marry passed the exam.

Give me **either** a cup **or** a glass.

Both red **and** yellow are attractive colours.

I like **neither** tea **nor** coffee.

He will be **either** in the room **or** in the hall.

John can speak **not only** English **but also** French.

Rule 1:

(1) And

(2) As well as

(3) Bothand

(4) Not onlyBut also

These co-relatives are used to join nouns, pronouns etc. but as far as adjectives are concerned, they join two desirable or two undesirable adjectives but not a desirable adjective with an undesirable one.

Ex - He is **both** intelligent **and** hard working.

He is **not only** dishonest **but also** lazy.

Rule 2: 'Hardly', 'Scarcely', 'Barely' and 'No sooner'. These expressions can be used (often with a past perfect tense) to suggest that one thing happened very soon after another. Note the sentence structure:

hardly.....when

scarcelywhen

barely.....when

No sooner.....than

Note that 'no sooner' is necessarily followed by 'than' and 'hardly/scarcely/barely' is followed by 'when', not 'than'. For example.

No sooner had the police reached **than** the burglars fled. (not, when)

Hardly had I reached the station **when** the train left. (not, than)

Barely had I started speaking **when** he interrupted me.

Scarcely had he fallen asleep **when** he had a dream.

Rule 3: If two subjects are joined by conjunctions like 'as well as', 'with', 'alongwith', 'and not', 'In addition to', 'but', 'besides', 'except', 'rather than', 'accompanied by', the verb agrees with the first subject.

Ex - Ram as well as his friends is coming.

He and not his parents is guilty.

Rule 4: Not onlybut also

'Not only' is followed by 'but also' and it means 'both....and'. In this construction the more important word (noun/ adjective/ verb) is placed after 'also' to make it prominent. In this structure, 'not only' and 'but also' can go immediately before the words or expressions that they modify. For example,

We go there **not only** in winter, **but also** in summer.

Not only the bathroom was flooded, **but also** the rest of the house.

Rule 5: Neither.....nor

This structure is used to join two negative ideas. It is opposite of 'both.....and'. It is usually rather formal.

For example,

I **neither** smoke **nor** drink.

The film was **neither** well made **nor** well acted.

Rule 6: Either.....or

We use 'either.....or' to talk about a choice between two possibilities (used sometimes more than two).

For example,

I don't speak **either** French **or** German.

You can **either** come with me now **or** walk home.

If you want ice-cream there is **either** strawberry, lemon **or** vanilla.

Rule 7: When conjunction are in pairs then the pair must be correct.

Some common

Conjunctions

And

Otherwise, or else

Therefore,

Some Common

Conjunctions

As well as

So, hence

Either.....or

Consequently
Neithernor

So.....that

Soas

Whether.....or

As soon as

Or.....

Not onlybut also

Where

Wherever

Whenever

While

As.....,

Such.....that

Provided

Though

Whereas

As though

Ex -

(a) Thought he worked hard but he failed. (✗)

Though he worked hard yet he failed. (✓)

(b) He is both intelligent as well as industrious. (✗)

He is **both** intelligent **and** industrious. (✓)

(c) The party is **from** 7 p.m. **to** 9 p.m. (✓)

(d) I have **no other** aim but to succeed in life. (✗)

I have **no other** aim **than** to succeed in life. (✓)

(e) Nothing **else but** arrogance ruined him. (✓)

(f) He asked me if I was coming or not. (✗)

He asked me **whether** I was coming or not. (✓)

both....and

Too....to

As.....as

As.....so

But

No sooner.....than

Scarcely.....when

Hardly.....when

when

Until/Unless.....,

Because

Lest.....should

If

As if

Although

Nevertheless

As far as

Rule 8: So....that/ such....that

Structures with 'very' cannot be followed directly by **that** - clauses. Instead, we can use 'so.....that' or 'such.....that'. For example,

It was **such** a cold afternoon **that** we stopped playing. (not, it was a **very** cold afternoon that....)

He spoke **so** fast **that** nobody could understand. (not, He spoke very fast that.....)

Rule 9: 'Neither of' means 'none of the two'. If 'more than two persons or things' are present, 'none of' is used.

Either of... means 'one of the two'. If more than two persons or things are present, 'one of' is used.

Ex - **None** of his four sons looked after him. (✓)

Either of the students of your class has done this mischief. (✗)

One of the students of your class has done this mischief. (✓)

Rule 10: As soon as.....

As soon as he will come, I will call you up. (✗)

As soon as he comes, I will call you up. (✓)

If two actions take place one after the other in future and if the second action depends on the first, the first action will be in simple present tense and the second action will be in simple future tense. (see the future conditional sentences)

Rule 11: 'If/when' is not followed by 'then'.

Ex - When I come, then, I will meet you.

Similarly 'since/ as/ because' are not followed by 'so/ therefore'.

Ex - Since I was ill, I could not come.

Rule 12: Lest.....Should

.....or.....

.....otherwise.....

Use the correct pair.

Run fast lest you will miss the train. (✗)

Run fast lest you should miss the train. (✓)

Note: 'Lest' can also simply take 'V₁' after it.

Take care lest he fall. (✓)

Rule 13: 'Unless', 'until' and 'till'

1. There is a difference between **until** and **unless**. 'Until' is 'time oriented' and 'unless' is 'action oriented'.

Ex - **Until** the light turns red, no one will stop.

Unless you work hard, you won't succeed.

2. We do not begin a sentence with 'till'.

Ex - **Till** the train gets the signal, it will not proceed. (✗)

('till' must be converted into 'until')

Rule 14: 'Until/ unless' is not followed by 'not'.

Ex - **Until** the train will not get the signal it will not run. (✗)

Until the train gets the signal, it will not run.

Note: 'will/would/shall' does not come after 'until' and 'unless'. (✓)

Ex - **Unless** the Government will not take action, corruption will not stop. (✗)

Unless the Government takes action, corruption will not stop. (✓)

Rule 15: (i) Asas and so.....as are used for comparison. As.....as is used in positive as well as in negative sentences and soas is used in negative sentence.

Ex - (1) He is as intelligent as you. (positive sentence)

(2) He is not as intelligent as you. (negative sentence)

(3) He is not so intelligent as you. (negative sentence)

(ii) Only the positive degrees of adverbs and adjectives can be used with **As.....as** and **so.....as**

Ex - (1) He ran as faster as he could (change faster into **fast**)

(2) He is as better as you. (change better into **good**)

Exercise

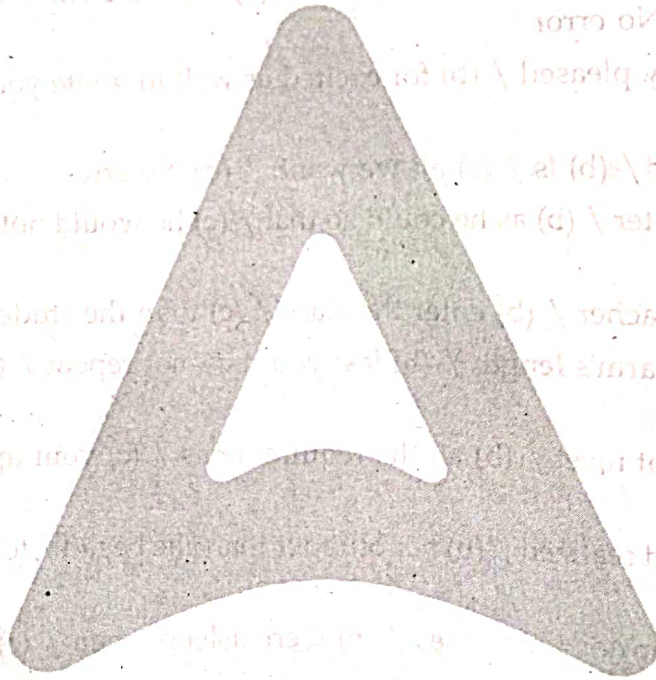
Directions (1 - 26): Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical error or idiomatic error in it. The error, if any, will be in one part of the sentence. The number of that part is the answer. If there is 'No error', the answer is (d). (Ignore errors of punctuation, if any).

1. (a) The period between / (b) 2000 to 2010 was very / (c) significant in my life. / (d) No error
2. (a) Your success in IAS examinations depends not only on / (b) what papers you have selected / (c) but on how you have written them. / (d) No error
3. (a) I haven't been to / (b) New York before and / (c) neither my sister. / (d) No error
4. (a) The reason why he / (b) was rejected was because / (c) he was too young. / (d) No error
5. (a) Scarcely had I bought / (b) the ticket when the train / (c) left the platform with a hissing sound. / (d) No error
6. (a) None of the diplomats at the conference / (b) was able either to / (c) comprehend or solve the problem. / (d) No error
7. (a) We are extremely pleased / (b) for excited as well to invite you / (c) to attend the meeting. / (d) No error
8. (a) Bread and butter / (b) is / (c) all we want. / (d) No error
9. (a) He walked as faster / (b) as he could so that / (c) he would not miss the train to work. / (d) No error
10. (a) No sooner the teacher / (b) enter the class / (c) than the students stood up / (d) No error
11. (a) Keep him at the arm's length / (b) lest you may not repent / (c) in the long run. / (d) No error
12. (a) Unless you do not meet / (b) all the requirements / (c) your application will be rejected. / (d) No error
13. (a) No sooner she had realized / (b) her blunder than she began / (c) to take corrective measures. / (d) No error
14. (a) Neither the doctor nor the nurses / (b) were asleep when / (c) the injured was brought to the hospital. / (d) No error
15. (a) This is perhaps the same place who / (b) was chosen by us / (c) for the picnic. / (d) No error

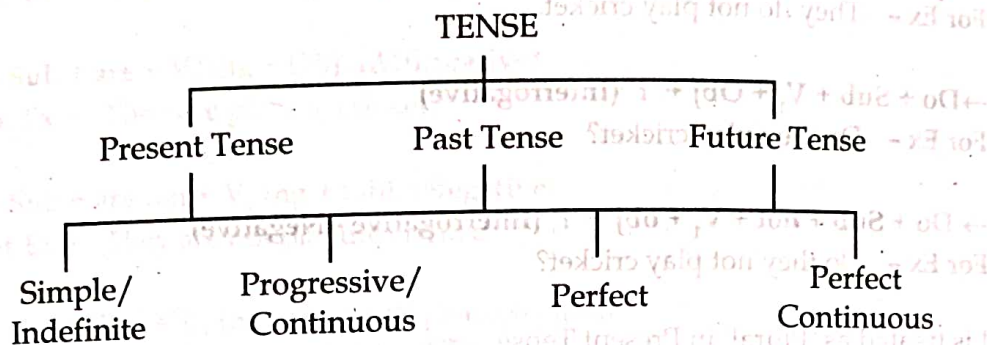
Solutions

1. (b); 'between' is followed by 'and' and not 'to'.
2. (c); 'But also' is used together with 'not only'. Add 'also' to 'but'
3. (c); 'Neither' is followed by 'helping verb' and then the subject. 'Neither has my sister' is the correct sentence form.
4. (b); 'because' cannot come with 'the reason why' because the sentence then becomes superfluous.
5. (d); No error.
6. (b); In the given sentence comprehend and solve are the two verbs, either must come before 'comprehend' because 'or' has been used before 'solve'. Put 'either' after 'to'

7. (b); Change 'for' into 'and'
8. (c); Add 'that' after 'all'.
9. (a); With 'as..... as' the adjective/ adverb will come in their positive degree. Change 'faster' into 'fast'.
10. (a); 'No sooner' is followed by 'a helping verb' and the 'sub'. 'No sooner did the teacher' will be the correct sentence form.
11. (b); Change 'may' into 'should' as 'Lest ... should' are together used as conjunction.
12. (a); 'Unless' is not followed by 'not'. 'Unless you meet' will be correct sentence formation.
13. (a); 'Had' must come after 'no sooner' and the subject must follow.
14. (d); No error
15. (a); 'The same' is followed by 'that' and moreover 'who' is not used for places.



Tenses



On the basis of time of an action performed, we can divide sentences into the following three tenses:

- (i) Present Tense (ii) Past Tense (iii) Future Tense

Again on the basis of state of an action performed, we can further classify each tense into the following four parts:

- (i) Simple Indefinite Tense
(ii) Progressive/ Continuous Tense
(iii) Perfect Tense
(iv) Perfect Continuous Tense

Present Tense

This Tense expresses an action that is currently going on or habitually performed or a state that currently or generally exists. We can classify present Tense into the following four parts:

- (i) Present Indefinite (Simple Present)
(ii) Present Continuous (Present Progressive)
(iii) Present Perfect
(iv) Present Perfect Continuous

(i) Present Indefinite Tense

This Tense is called Present 'Indefinite' Tense because in this Tense, the action is simply mentioned and nothing can be said about its completeness. This Tense is used to express an action which occurs on regular basis.

Structure

For Singular:

→ Sub + V₁ + s/es + Obj. (Affirmative)

For Ex - She writes a letter

→ Sub + does not + V₁ + Obj. (Negative)

For Ex - She does not write a letter.

→ Does + Sub + V₁ + Obj. + '?' (Interrogative)

For Ex - Does she write a letter?

→ Does + Sub + not + V₁ + Obj + '?' (Interrogative - Negative)

For Ex - Does she not write a letter?

For Plural:

→ Sub + V₁ + Obj (Affirmative)

For Ex - They play cricket.

→ Sub + do not + V₁ + Obj (Negative)

For Ex - They do not play cricket.

→ Do + Sub + V₁ + Obj + '?' (Interrogative)

For Ex - Do they play cricket?

→ Do + Sub + not + V₁ + obj + '?' (Interrogative - Negative)

For Ex - Do they not play cricket?

Note: I is treated as 'Plural' in Present Tense.

For Ex - I eat dinner at 8 O'clock daily.

Uses:

1. To show Habitual Actions

For Ex - (a) He goes out for a walk every day.

(b) My father visits temple thrice a week.

2. To show General truth/Universal truth/permanent truth etc.

For Ex - (a) The sun rises in the east.

(b) Water boils at 100°C.

3. To show imperative sentences.

For Ex - (a) Always obey your parents.

(b) Do not play on the road.

4. In exclamatory sentences which start with 'Here' and 'There'

For Ex - (a) Here comes the train!

(b) There rings the bell!

5. In newspaper headlines and commentary of sports.

For Ex - (a) India launches a satellite.

(b) Sachin hits a boundary.

6. To describe the events that occurred in past in a dramatic way.

For Ex - (a) India uproots the British Empire.

(b) Alexander defeats Paurus.

7. This Tense is also used to express professional activities.

For Ex - (a) A barber cuts hair.

(b) A confectioner sells sweets.

(ii) Present Continuous Tense

This Tense is used to express action that is currently in progress.

Structure

For Singular:

→ Sub + is + V₁ ing + Obj (Affirmative)

For Ex - She is singing a song.

→ Sub + is not + V₁ ing + Obj (Negative)

For Ex - She is not singing a song

→ Is + Sub + V₁ ing + Obj + '?' (Interrogative)
For Ex - Is she singing a song?

→ Is + Sub + not + V₁ ing + Obj + (Interrogative - Negative)
For Ex - Is she not singing a song?

For Plural:

→ Sub + are + V₁ ing + Obj. (Affirmative)
For Ex - They are playing cricket.

→ Sub + are not + V₁ ing + Obj. (Negative)
For Ex - They are not playing cricket.

→ Are + Sub + V₁ ing + Obj + '?' (Interrogative)
For Ex - Are they playing cricket?

→ Are + Sub + not + V₁ ing + Obj + '?' (Interrogative - Negative)
For Ex - Are they not playing cricket?

Note: 'Am' is used as helping verb with I.
For Ex - I am reading a novel.

Uses:

1. To show a continuous action.

For Ex - (a) She is playing chess.

(b) They are not driving a car.

2. To show those actions which have following words

"Now, these days, now-a-days, still, at this time, at this moment, at present."

For Ex - (a) Is she still reading?

(b) My mother is reading the Mahabharata now.

3. To denote a change of present state/situation into another.

For Ex - (a) Cars are becoming costlier day by day.

(b) She is getting more and more complicated.

4. To show those events/ actions that will take place in near future.

For Ex - (a) I am going on vacations tomorrow.

(b) She is getting married next week.

(iii) Present perfect Tense

This Tense is used to express those actions that have been finished recently.

Structure

For singular:

→ Sub + has + V₃ + Obj (Affirmative)

For Ex - She has bought a house.

→ Sub + has not + V₃ + Obj (Negative)

For Ex - She has not bought a house.

→ Has + Sub + V₃ + Obj + '?' (Interrogative)

For Ex - Has she bought a house?

→ Has + Sub + not + V₃ + Obj + ? (Interrogative - Negative)
For Ex - Has she not bought a house?

For Plural:

→ Sub + have + V₃ + Obj (Affirmative)

For Ex - They have completed their work.

→ Sub + have not + V₃ + Obj (Negative)

For Ex - They have not completed their work.

→ Have + Sub + V₃ + Obj + '?' (Interrogative)

For Ex - Have they completed their work?

→ Have + Sub + not + V₃ + Obj + ? (Interrogative - Negative)

For Ex - Have they not completed their work?

Note: I is used as 'Plural' in this type of Tense

For Ex - I have submitted my assignment

Uses:

1. To show the action that has just ended

For Ex - (a) I have written a letter

(b) Ishan has gone to Mumbai.

2. In sentences which consist the following:

"This/That/It is the first/second/third/best/worst".

For Ex - (a) This is the worst novel, I have ever read.

(b) It is the best book, I have ever read.

3. To show those sentences which have the following words.

"Already, so far, as yet, yet, upto now, just, just now, recently, ever, lately"

For Ex - (a) I have already taken my lunch.

(b) Have you ever been to London?

Note: Generally, Present Perfect Tense does not take an adverb of Past time.

For Ex - 'I have seen Amit yesterday' is wrong.

⇒ Simple past is used when an adverb of past is mentioned.

Therefore, the correct usage of sentence given above should be as follows:

'I saw Amit yesterday.'

(iv) **Present perfect Continuous**

This type of Tense is used to express those actions that had begun in the past and are still in progress.

Structure:

For Singular:

→ Sub + has been + V₁ ing + Obj. + since/for + Time being. (Affirmative)

For Ex - (a) Ram has been living here since 1993

(b) Ram has been living here for last ten years.

→ Sub + has not been + V₁ ing + Obj. + since/for + Time being. (Negative)

For Ex - (a) Ram has not been living here since 1993.

(b) Ram has not been living here for last ten years.

→ Has + Sub + been + V₁ ing + Obj + since/for + Time being + '?' (Interrogative)
For Ex - (a) Has Ram been living here since 1993?
(b) Has Ram been living here for last ten years.

→ Has + Sub + not + been + V₁ ing + Obj + since/for + Time being + '?' (Interrogative - Negative)
For Ex - (a) Has Ram not been living here since 1993?
(b) Has Ram not been living here for last ten years.

For Plural:

→ Sub + have been + V₁ ing + Obj. + since/for + Time being. (Affirmative)

For Ex - (a) They have been singing since morning.
(b) They have been singing for two hours.

→ Sub + have not been + V₁ ing + Obj. + since/for + Time being. (Negative)

For Ex - (a) They have not been singing since morning.
(b) They have not been singing for two hours.

→ Have + Sub + been + V₁ ing + Obj. + since/for + Time being + '?' (Interrogative)

For Ex - (a) Have they been singing since morning?
(b) Have they been singing for two hours?

→ Have + Sub + not + been + V₁ ing + Obj. + since/for + Time being + '?' (Interrogative - Negative)

For Ex - Have they not been singing for two hours?

Note: 'I' is used as plural in this tense

For Ex - I have been cleaning the room since morning.

Note: (a) 'since' is used to represent 'Point of time'
(b) 'for' is used to represent 'Period of time'

Uses:

1. To show those actions that had begun in the past and are still in progress.

For Ex - The baby has been sleeping since morning.

2. It can be used with time phrases like

"for, since, long, how long, all the time, all week, etc.

For Ex - (a) For how long have you been eating?

(b) She has been crying all the time.

Past Tense

This Tense expresses an action that has happened or a state that previously existed

Like present Tense, Past Tense can also be classified into following four parts:"

- (a) Past Indefinite (Simple Past)
- (b) Past Continuous (Past Progressive)
- (c) Past Perfect
- (d) Past Perfect continuous

(i) **Past Indefinite Tense**

This Tense is used to express an action that happened or finished in the past.

Structure:

The structure of sentence with singular/plural subject remains same in Past Indefinite Tense.

For Singular:

For Plural:

For Singular } Sub + V₂ + Obj. (Affirmative)
→ For Plural }

For Ex - She wrote a book.

→ Sub + Did not + V₁ + Obj (Negative)

For Ex - She did not write a book.

→ Did + Sub + V₁ + Obj + '?' (Interrogative)

For Ex - Did she write a book?

→ Did + Sub + not + V₁ + Obj + '?' (Interrogative - Negative)

For Ex - Did she not write a book?

Uses:

1. To Show a past action.

For Ex - (a) I wrote a letter yesterday.

(b) She came last week.

Note: Following words are used in Past Indefinite Tense.

"Yesterday, ago, last, the other day, the day before, etc."

2. To show a past habit.

For Ex - (a) I played cricket in my childhood.

(b) She always prayed to God.

3. This Tense is used in conditional sentences to indicate a condition which is unlikely to occur.

For Ex - (a) I wish I knew singing.

(b) If Ravi came we would congratulate him.

4. With the phrase

"It is time, It is high time, It is about time"

For Ex - (a) It is time you repaired the A/c.

(b) It is about time you got a haircut.

(ii) Past Continuous Tense

This Tense is used to express an action which was in progress for some time in the past.

Structure:

For singular:

→ Sub + was + V₁ ing + Obj (Affirmative)

For Ex - She was calling me.

→ Sub + was not + V₁ ing + Obj (Negative)

For Ex - She was not calling me.

→ Was + Sub + V₁ ing + Obj + '?' (Interrogative)

For Ex - Was she calling me?

→ Was + Sub + not + V₁ ing + Obj + '?' (Interrogative - Negative)

For Ex - Was she not calling me?

For Plural:

→ Sub + were + V₁ ing + Obj (Affirmative)

For Ex - They were watching a movie.

→ Sub + were not + V₁ ing + Obj (Negative)

For Ex - They were not watching a movie.

→ Were + Sub + V₁ ing + Obj + '?' (Interrogative)

For Ex - Were they watching a movie?

→ Were + Sub + not + V₁ ing + '?' (Interrogative - Negative)

For Ex - Were they not watching a movie?

Note: 'I' is used as singular Subject in this Tense.

For Ex - I was writing a letter.

Uses:

1. This Tense is used when two actions were **simultaneously in progress in the past**.

For Ex - (a) While she was preparing lunch, I was taking shower.

(b) While I was reading, my wife was watching T.V.

2. This Tense is also used in combination with **Simple past**

For Ex - (a) While I was walking in the fields, I found a mobile phone.

(b) When I was going to school, a dog bit me.

(iii) **Past Perfect Tense**

This Tense expresses an action which has been completed (a long time ago) in the Past.

Structure:

The structure of sentences with singular/Plural Subject remains same in Past Perfect Tense.

→ For Singular } Sub + had + V₃ + Obj. (Affirmative)
For Plural }

For Ex - He had left for USA.

→ Sub + had not + V₃ + Obj. (Negative)

For Ex - He had not left for USA.

→ Had + Sub + V₃ + Obj. + '?' (Interrogative)

For Ex - Had he left for USA?

→ Had + Sub + not + V₃ + Obj + '?' (Interrogative - Negative)

For Ex - Had he not left for USA?

Uses:

1. When two actions occur in the past, one after the other, then, the first action is expressed in Past perfect Tense and the second action is expressed in Simple Past Tense.

For Ex - (a) The patient had died before the doctor came.

(b) He came after she had gone.

2. To express some unfulfilled wish in the Past.

For Ex - (a) I had hoped that he would pass.

(b) She had expected his arrival, but he did not come.

(iv) **Past perfect Continuous Tense**

This Tense is used to express an action that started in past, continued for a period of time and then finished in Past.

Structure:

The structure of sentences with singular/Plural subject remains same in Past Perfect Continuous Tense.

→ For Singular } Sub + had been + V₁ ing + obj + Since/for + time being. (Affirmative)
For Plural }

For Ex - (a) She had been watching T.V. for two hours.
(b) She had been watching T.V. since 2 p.m.

→ Sub + had not been + V₁ ing + Obj + Since/for + Time being (Negative)

For Ex - (a) She had not been watching T.V. for Two hours.
(b) She had not been watching T.V. since 2.00 PM.

→ Had + Sub + been + V₁ ing + since/for + Time being + '?' (Interrogative)

For Ex - (a) Had she been watching T.V. for two hours?
(b) Had she been watching T.V. since 2:00 PM?

→ Had + Sub + not + been + V₁ ing + Obj + Since/for + Time being + '?' (Interrogative Negative)

For Ex - (a) Had she not been watching TV for two hours?
(b) Had she not been watching T.V. since 2:00 PM.

Uses:

1. It is used to express a repeated action in the past.

For Ex - (a) I had been trying to contact you.
(b) He had been trying to get a good job.

2. It is used to express an action that had happened in the past and its effects were still visible in the past.

For Ex - (a) She had been playing tennis when the news of her selection came in.
(b) I had been reading novel for 2 hours, when she asked me about its plot.

Future Tense

This Tense expresses an action that has not yet happened or a state that does not exist but is expected to take place after some time from now.

Future Tense can be classified into following four Tenses

- (i) Future Indefinite (Simple Future)
- (ii) Future Continuous (Future Progressive)
- (iii) Future Perfect
- (iv) Future Perfect Continuous.

(i) Future Indefinite Tense

This Tense expresses an action that is expected to be finished in near future.

Structure:

Note: The structure of sentences with singular/plural subject remains same in future Indefinite Tense.

→ For Singular } Sub + will + V₁ + obj. (Affirmative)
For Plural }

For Ex - (a) She will call you.
(b) They will call you.

→ Sub + will not + V₁ + Obj. (Negative)

For Ex - She will not call you.

→ Will + Sub + V₁ + Obj + '?' (Interrogative)

For Ex - Will she call you?

→ Will + Sub + V₁ + Obj + '?' (Interrogative - Negative)
For Ex - Will she not call you?

Note: Now a days, only 'will' is used as helping verb in future Tense because the usage of 'Shall' has gone out of style in modern English. Though 'Shall' is still used sometimes.
Note: Use of Shall/will is explained in modals.

Uses:

To show conditional actions that have adverb clause, Present Indefinite Tense along with 'unless, until, when, if'

For Ex - (a) Unless she works hard, she will not pass.
(b) If you run fast, you will win the race.

(ii) Future Continuous Tense

This Tense used to express an action that will be in progression in Future.

Structure:

The structure of sentences with singular/Plural subject remains same in future continuous Tense.

For Singular }
For Plural }

→ Sub + will be + V₁ ing + Obj. (Affirmative)

For Ex - She will be cooking food at this time tomorrow.

→ Sub + will not be + v₁ ing + Obj. (Negative)

For Ex - She will not be cooking food at this time tomorrow.

→ Will + Sub + be + V₁ ing + '?' (Interrogative)

For Ex - Will she be cooking food at this time tomorrow?

→ Will + Sub + not + be + V₁ ing + Obj + '?' (Interrogative - Negative)

For Ex - Will she not be cooking food at this time tomorrow?

(iii) Future Perfect Tense

This Tense expresses those actions that will certainly be finished at a point in future.

Structure:

→ Sub + will have + V₃ + Obj (Affirmative)

For Ex - She will have submitted her project by Monday.

→ Sub + will not have + V₃ + Obj (Negative)

For Ex - She will not have submitted her project by Monday.

→ Will + Sub + have V₃ + Obj + '?' (Interrogative)

For Ex - Will she have submitted her project by Monday?

→ Will + Sub + not + have + V₃ + Obj + '?' (Interrogative - Negative)

For Ex - Will she not have submitted her project by Monday?

Note: In future perfect Tense, when an action is expected to be completed in near future, till/by are used before the adverb of future.

For Ex - "by tomorrow, till next week, by Monday"

Uses:

To show an action in which 'when' or 'before' is followed by present Tense.

For Ex - (a) I will have completed this task before she comes.

(b) He will have reached school before the bell rings.

(iv) **Future Perfect Continuous Tense:**

This Tense is used to express an action that continues upto some point of time in future.

Structure:

→ Sub + will have been + V₁ ing + Obj. + Since/for + Time being (Affirmative)

For Ex - She will have been washing clothes for 3 hours.

→ Sub + will not have been + V₁ ing + Obj + since/for + Time being (Negative)

For Ex - Will not have been washing clothes for 3 hrs.

→ Will + Sub + have been + V₁ ing + Obj + Since/for + time being + '?' (Interrogative)

For Ex - Will she have been washing clothes for 3 hours?

→ Will + Sub + not + have been + V₁ ing + Obj + since/for + time being + '?' (Interrogative - Negative)

For Ex - Will she not have been washing clothes for 3 hrs?

Note: Future perfect progressive denotes continuous action while future perfect denotes complete action.

For Ex - (a) By the end of this month, I will have been travelling for 6 months (Continuous action)

(b) By the end of this month, I will have travelled for 6 months (Completed Action)

Exercise

Directions: Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical error in it. The error, if any, will be in one part of the sentence. The number of that part is the answer. If there is no error, the answer is '4' i.e. No error, (Ignore the errors of punctuation, if any).

1. The question is (a)/so complicated that (b)/it could not be resolved immediately. (c)/No error (d)
2. Ragesh ^{had finished} finished his work (a)/just before you came to see him (b)/ at his residence. (c)/No error (d)
3. Rakesh asked me (a)/why ^{was} I angry at his remarks (b)/which he had not made deliberately. (c)/No error (d)
4. If I ~~would~~ ^{had} have spoken to my father (a)/as you spoke to me (b)/ he would have beaten me. (c)/No error (d)
5. Foolishly Dhananjay threw (a)/some water on the electric heater (b)/when it catches fire (c)/ and he got a shock. (d)/No error (5)
6. The enmity between the (a)/ two groups ~~had~~ ^{caught} reached a level (b)/where reconciliation ~~has~~ (c)/ become impossible. (d)/No error (5)
7. If Deepak had been with us (a)/ from the beginning (b)/we would be much happier. (c)/ No error (d)
8. As soon as Sujeeet saw the tiger, (a)/ he ^{ran} run (b)/and climbed up the tree. (c)/No error (d)
9. Rakesh ^{had} has already gone (a)/ before the (b)/roof fell down to the earth. (c)/ No error (d)
10. The film ^{had started} started (a)/ before we reached (b)/because we were late. (c)/ No error (d)
11. When you will find out (a)/ any solution to this problem you will become able (b)/ to finalise the project. (c)/ No error (d)
12. Whenever you ^{were} are coming here, (a)/ you bring a lot of (b)/ sweets for me.(c)/ No error (d)
13. A misogynist is a person (a)/ who ^{was} is hating woman but a philogynist is a person (b)/ who loves woman. (c)/ No error (d)

14. Now-a-days he teaches physics (a)/ because the teacher of physics (b)/ ^{had been} ~~has been~~ absents himself for a month. (c)/ No error (d)
15. 'It is high time (a)/ you are starting this work.' (b)/ my friend said to me. (c)/ No error (d)
16. Many of my friends (a)/ wished to come here today but (b)/ none of them ^{had} ~~arrived~~ yet. (c)/ No error (d)
17. She ~~says~~ ^{am} that she will take (a)/ her umbrella (b)/ in case it will rain. (c)/ No error (d)
18. When I ~~will be~~ ^{am} thirty (a)/ most of my friends (b)/ will be above thirty five, be sure. (c)/ No error (d)
19. This is, indeed, (a)/ the first time in my life that I ~~hear~~ ^{have heard} (b)/ such an interesting story. (c)/ No error (d)
20. Before the alarm (a)/ ~~had stopped~~ ^{stopped} ringing (b)/ John had pulled up the shade. (c)/ No error (d)
21. I have been knowing (a)/ him for ten years but I don't know (b)/ where he lives. (c)/ No error (d)
22. If he had a few hours to spare, (a)/ he would spend (b)/ them in a public library. (c)/ No error (d)
23. If I ~~would~~ have done this, (a)/ I would have done wrong and would have disappointed (b)/ many of my friends. (c)/ No error (d)
24. I wish he ~~saw~~ ^{had seen} you (a)/ when you ~~were~~ (b)/ living in England. (c)/ No error (d)
25. I ~~lived here~~ since 1980, (a)/ therefore I know everything (b)/ about the city. (c)/ No error (d)
26. If we had Mohan in our team, we (a)/ would have won the match (b)/ against your team. (c)/ No error (d)
27. If I ~~was~~ ^{were} you I would have told (a)/ the Chairman to keep (b)/ his mouth shut. (c)/ No error (d)
28. The victim tried to tell up (a)/ what ~~has~~ ^{had} happened (b)/ but his words were not audible. (c)/ No error (d)
29. She was with me upto now, (a)/ so don't rebuke her (b)/ for getting late. (c)/ No error (d)
30. Had he come even a moment earlier, (a)/ he would have (b)/ found me there. (c)/ No error (d)
31. After you ~~will~~ return (a)/ from Mumbai (b) / I will come to meet you. (c) / No error. (d)
32. My father (a)/ ~~has~~ left (b) /for Bombay last Saturday. (c) /No error. (d)
33. I used to study (a) /till 10 pm and (b) /and then I ~~go~~ ^{went} to bed. (c) /No error. (d)
34. Air pollution caused by industrial fumes ~~has~~ ^{have} been studied (a)/ for years, but only recently ~~has~~ (b)/ the harmful effects of noise pollution become known(c)/. No error. (d)
35. The judge asked the man (a)/ if the bag he had lost(b)/ contain five thousand rupees (c)/No error (d)
36. As you can see(a)/ by my visiting card (b)/that now I am in Mumbai. (c)/No error (d)
37. The ministry ~~was~~ considered several proposals (a)/ for the development of small and medium enterprises (b)/during Budget discussions. (c)/No error (d)
38. Having ~~work~~ ^{worked} (a)/ in both public and private sector banks (b) she is the most suitable person to take over the post of the chairman. (c)/No error(d)
39. He started a very small business two years ago (a)/ but it grew very fast (b)/as the country ~~is~~ ^{was} experiencing a boom at that time. (c)/No error(d)
40. Keeping in mind the current market conditions (a)/ it ~~has~~ ^{is} better for us (b)/ to invest in the infrastructure structure. (c)/No error(d)
41. Since I had lived there for many years(a)/the villagers were very comfortable(b)/ ~~talked~~ ^{talked} to me about all their problems. (c)/No error(d)

42. Our equipment gets (a)/ damaged very often in summer (b)/ because there are too many power cuts (c)/ No error (d)
43. Seemed Most children liked to rest in the afternoon (a)/ after they returned from school (b)/ but my seems to have an inexhaustible source of energy. (c)/ No error (d)
44. The cutting down on costs (a)/ was the main reason for the firm to survive (b)/ even during a difficult period. (c)/ No error (d)
45. I will go (a)/ for the swimming classes tomorrow (b)/ if I have recovered from fever. (c)/ No error (d)
46. The principal announced (a)/ in the school assembly that the school fees (b)/ will be hiked from beginning of the next academic session. (c)/ No error (d)
47. The terrorist did not (a)/ confessed his crime even till the very end (b)/ of his trial and said that was innocent. (c) / No error (d)
48. Will If the industrial sector continues to grow (a)/ at the same rate for the next few months (b)/ I think has a high growth rate this year. (c)/ No error (d)
49. Results find that boys (a)/ played not only more than girls (b)/ but also performed better in matches. (c)/ No error (d)
50. Celebrating his ten long years in the film industry (a)/ the actor announce that he would be doing a new show (b)/ on television which would be done completely free of (c)/ No error (d)
51. Had I known (a)/ the weather forecast earlier (b)/ I would not make plans to go out. (c)/ No error (d)
52. If you to talk to her on this sensitive matter (a)/ it is probable (b)/ that she will not listen to you at all. (c)/ No error (d)
53. On many occasions (a)/ we did helped the poor (b)/ people by way of giving them food to eat and clothes to put on. (c)/ No error (d)
54. The new year party continued (a)/ till midnight as more and more (b)/ guests join in the fun and frolic. (c)/ No error (d)
55. The market continues to be positive (a)/ and we expected the trend (b) to continue in the next quarter also. (c)/ No error (d)
56. Big landlords in the villages (a)/ who were till now paid for electricity (b)/ at subsidized rates soon have to pay the government at full rates. (c)/ No error (d)
57. The new vaccination will help (a)/ in prevent the disease (b)/ to spread to other parts of the country. (c)/ No error (d)
58. A sharp rise in the prices of petrol (a)/ has lead to an increase (b)/ in the prices of all the commodities. (c)/ No error (d)
59. Dressed in a beautiful blue gown (a)/ the little girl eagerly waits for her father to return (b)/ so she could cut the cake. (c) / No error (d)
60. The High Court on Thursday (a)/ ban running of diesel run vehicles (b)/ including small vehicles in the eco sensitive zone. (c) / No error (d)

Solutions

1. (c) Use 'it cannot be' in place of 'it could not be'. The given sentence is in present tense so use of 'can' is correct.
 2. (a) Use 'Rajesh had finished his work' in place of 'Rajesh finished his work'. Past perfect tense is used to describe past event.
- Example-**
The patient died before the doctor came.
(x)
The patient had died before the doctor came. (✓)
3. (b) Use 'why I was angry' in place of 'why was I angry'.
 4. (a) Use 'If I had' in place of 'If I would have'.
 5. (c) Use 'when it caught fire' in place of 'when it catches fire'.
 6. (c) Use 'had' in place of 'has'.
 7. (c) Use 'would have been' in place of 'would be'.
 8. (b) Use 'he ran' in place of 'he run'.
 9. (a) Use 'Rakesh had already gone' in place of 'Rakesh has already gone'.
 10. (a) Use 'The film had started' in place of 'The film started'.
 11. (a) Use 'you find' in place of 'you will find'.
 12. (a) Use 'you come' in place of 'you are coming'.
 13. (b) Use 'who hates' in place of 'who is hating'.
 14. (a) Use 'he is teaching' in place of 'he teaches'.
 15. (b) Use 'You started' in place of 'You are starting'.
 16. (c) Use 'has arrived' in place of 'arrived'.
 17. (c) Use 'it rains' in place of 'it will rain'.
 18. (a) Use 'I am thirty' in place of 'I will be thirty'.
 19. (b) Use 'I have heard' in place of 'I hear'.
 20. (b) Use 'Stopped' in place of 'had stopped'.
 21. (a) Use 'have known' in place of 'have been knowing'.
 22. (d) No error.
 23. (b) Use 'had done' in place of 'would have done'.
 24. (a) Use 'had seen' in place of 'saw'.
 25. (b) Use 'have lived' in place of 'lived'.
 26. (b) Use 'we had had Mohan' in place of 'we had Mohan'.
 27. (b) Use 'were' in place of 'was'.
 28. (a) Use 'had' in place of 'has'.
 29. (c) Use 'has been' in place of 'was'.
 30. (d) No error.
 31. (a) Remove will. Do not use will after time clause.
 32. (b) It is clearly mentioned that the activity is of last Saturday use simple past in part b. So remove has.
 33. (c) 'Used to' is used for past habitual action. In part c change go to went.
 34. (b) use have instead of has as harmful effects of noise pollution is plural.
 35. (c) Replace contain by contained as the sentence is in past tense.
 36. (d) (no error)
 37. (a) Use simple past tense. (The ministry considered several proposals)
 38. (a) Replace work by worked as the sentence is of past tense.
 39. (c) The sentence is of past tense. So, use was experiencing.
 40. (b) Replace it has better for us by it is better for us. The sentence is in present tense.
 41. (c) Use talking instead of talked as the latter part of the sentence is in past continuous tense.
 42. (b) Use damaged instead of damage as the sentence is in passive voice. Third form of the verb is used in passive voice.
 43. (c) replace seems by seemed as the sentence is in past tense.

44. (d) (No error)
45. (c) If I have recovered is to be replaced by if I recover. Sentences of future beginning with if should be in simple present.
46. (c) replace will by would. (The sentence is in indirect speech)
47. (b) replace confessed by confess. (We use first form of the verb with did.)
48. (c) replace I think it has by will have as it is of the future tense.
49. (a) replace find by found as the sentence is of past tense.
50. (b) replace announce by announced as the sentence is of past tense.
51. (c) replace would not make by would not have made. (for imaginary sentences of the past tense would have and third form of the verb is used)
52. (d) No error
53. (b) Remove did
54. (c) replace join by joined as the sentence is past tense.
55. (b) replace expect by expect as the latter part the sentence is of future tense.
56. (b) replace paid by paying as the sentence is past continuous tense.
57. (b) replace prevent by preventing (We use the verb + ing after all prepositions except to)
58. (b) replace lead by led. With has/have and third form of the verb is used. (lead, led led)
59. (b) Replace waits by waited as the sentence is in past tense.
60. (b) Replace ban by banned as the sentence is in past tense.

Articles

An article is a word or a letter which is often used before a noun and tells about the certainty of that noun.

There are two types of articles:

- (i) Indefinite Article (A/An)
- (ii) Definite Articles (The)

Articles can be used before noun, but not all nouns are used with articles. Therefore, it becomes necessary to understand the correct usage of articles.

I. Indefinite Articles (A, AN)

Indefinite Articles are used to introduce new concepts (noun phrase) into a discourse.

These articles are called indefinite because their usage implies that the thing, which is being referred to is nonspecific.

For Ex - He caught a bird. (any bird).

Note: Indefinite articles are generally used before "Countable Singular Nouns"

For Ex - This is an apple, This is a car, She is a teacher.

Uses of Indefinite Articles.

Usage of 'A'

1. If the first letter of a countable singular common noun is 'Consonant', 'A' is used before it.

For Ex - (a) Rajeev has bought a new car

(b) I have caught a fish

2. 'A' is used with a singular countable common noun when the noun denotes a complete class of things/Persons/Animals etc.

For Ex - A dog has four legs.

In the above sentence, 'A' has been used before 'dog' because we are talking about a complete class of dogs.

3. 'A' is used before a Profession, rank, title, religion, nationality, etc.

For Ex - A teacher, A Japanese, A Hindu.

4. 'A' is used before singular countable nouns and after 'what' and 'How', in exclamatory sentences.

For Ex - (a) What a beautiful painting!

(b) What a great match it was!

5. 'A' is used before an indefinite collective noun.

For Ex - A team of cricket players, A bundle of money

6. 'A' is used to express the rate.

For Ex - Ten rupees a kilo, Fifty words a minute.

Note: we can also use 'per' in the place of 'a' in the above expressions.

Ten Rupees per kilo, Fifty words per minute

7. We use 'A' before an adjective, when the adjective is followed by a singular noun.

For Ex - (a) Madhuri is a good dancer.

(b) Lata is a melodious singer.

8. When a verb is used as a noun, we use 'a' before that verb:
For Ex - (a) I'll take a bath in the morning.

9. If 'a' is used before a plural number, the forthcoming noun becomes singular.
For Ex - (a) Five days match → a five day match.
(b) Ten days trip → a ten day trip.

10. If 'such, quite, how, rather, etc' are placed before a noun, 'a' is used before that noun.
For Ex - (a) I have never driven such a car in my life.
(b) Ram is quite a brilliant boy.

11. If words like 'Noise, lie, hole, headache, etc' are used in singular sense, then we use 'a' before them.
For Ex - (a) I have a headache today.
(b) He never tells a lie.

12. A is used before some indefinite numbers:
For Ex - A lot of books, A great many actors, A number of questions.

Usage of 'AN'

1. If the first letter of a countable singular noun is a vowel, then 'An' is used before it.
For Ex - (a) He is an astronaut.
(b) He ate an apple.

2. We use 'An' before some abbreviations which start with 'H, L, M, N, F, R, S, X, etc'.
For Ex - (a) He is an MLA.
(b) She works for an N.G.O.

Note: We can use 'an' in the place of 'a' whenever the indefinite article is followed by a noun which starts with a 'vowel sound'.

Note: Indefinite articles ('A' / 'An') are used on the basis of the 'initial sound' of a noun and not of the first letter of the same, because usage of 'A' / 'An' depends on the initial sound of the noun and not on its spelling.

For Ex - We write ⇒ 'An honest man' (not 'A honest man')
⇒ 'An hour ago', (not 'a hour ago')

Similarly, we write: A union. (not 'an union')

A European (not 'an European')

The Omissions of Indefinite Articles (An/An)

1. Indefinite Articles are not used with a 'Plural Noun'

For Ex - A cars are parked (wrong)

Cars are parked (correct)

2. Indefinite Articles are not used before the name of "meals", "Sports", "Subjects", "language", etc.

For Ex - (a) Harsh was absent from a dinner (wrong)

Harsh was absent from dinner (correct)

(b) I am playing a Tennis (wrong)

I am playing Tennis (Correct)

(c) She is teaching a Hindi right now. (wrong)

She is teaching Hindi right now. (correct)

3. Indefinite articles are not used before material noun.

For Ex - (a) It is a gold (wrong)
It is gold. (correct)

(b) That statue is made up on an Iron. (wrong)
That statue is made up of Iron. (correct)

4. Indefinite Article are not used two times for the same noun in the same sentence.

For Ex - (a) Priya is a singer and a dancer. (wrong)
Priya is a singer and dancer. (correct)

(b) India is a great and a beautiful country (wrong)
India is a great and beautiful country (correct)

II. DEFINITE ARTICLE (THE)

Definite Article (the) is used when the noun with which it is used is a particular one, which is identifiable to the listener. It may also be used for a noun that has already been mentioned or is uniquely specified.

For Ex - "This is the boy who played cricket."

In the above sentence, the boy has been specified to be the one 'Who played cricket'.

Note: Unlike indefinite articles, the definite article can be placed before both singular and plural nouns.

For Ex - (a) She called the doctor.
(b) One of the boys is absent.

Uses of Definite Article (The)

1. Definite article (The) is used before a noun if it is followed by a relative pronoun stressly.

For Ex - (a) He is the boy who plays Guitar.
(b) She is the girl who plays Tennis.
(c) This is the dog which I bought.

2. Definite article (The) is used before the name of **commission, Rivers, Seas, Gulfs, Deserts, Direction, Canals, historical caste, Name of titles and posts, buildings and monuments, Religious books, Community, Holy Scriptures**, etc.

For Ex - The Ganga, The Arabian Gulf, The Pacific Ocean, The Mahabharata, The Gita, The East, The Sun, The Taj Mahal, The Brahmin, The Iron Man, The Father of the Nation.

3. 'The' is used before an adjective if that adjective is followed by proper noun.

For Ex - Yesterday, I met the great Sachin Tendulkar.

4. 'The' is used before common noun whenever it is used as adjective.

For Ex - When Sonam saw a hungry girl crying, the mother came in her.

5. 'The' is used whenever two proper nouns are compared.

For Ex - Prabhu Deva is the Michael Jackson of India.

6. 'The' is always used before "Superlative degree"

For Ex - (a) Shyam is the fattest boy of his class.
(b) Rahul is the best player of his team.

7. If comparative Degree is used for two, or, it is used in parallel, then the Definite Article (The) is used before it.

- For Ex - (a) The more you sweat in peace, the less you bleed in war
(b) Rajesh is the taller of the two sons
8. We use Definite article (The) before ordinals.
For Ex - The latter, The former, The first, The last.
9. The is used before the word 'Space' only when it means 'room'
For Ex - We all tried to get into his car but the space was not enough.

The omissions of definite Article

1. Definite Article (The) is not used before the name of language and sports.

For Ex - (a) The Hindi is our national language. (Wrong)

Hindi is our national language (correct)

(b) The Hockey is my favourite sport. (Wrong)

Hockey is my favourite sport. (Correct)

2. Definite Article is not used before the name of day, month, parts of day.

For Ex - (a) The Monday is the first day. (Wrong)

Monday is the first day. (Correct)

(b) The December is the last month. (Wrong)

December is the last month.

3. 'The' is not used before the name of meals

For Ex - The breakfast was very delicious. (Wrong)

Breakfast was very delicious. (Correct)

4. Definite article (The) is not used before these words.

"Life, money, Pride, God, Love, Society, Parliament, Death" and name of subjects.

For Ex - (a) The love is as important as the air we breathe. (Wrong)

Love is as important as the air we breathe (Correct)

(b) The mathematics is an interesting subject (wrong)

Mathematics is an interesting subject. (Correct)

⇒ But, if the words given above are particularised or if the name of the subjects is particularised we use definite article before them.

For Ex - (a) The love of mother is incomparable. (Correct)

(b) The Mathematics of Priya are good. (Correct)

5. Definite article should not be used before these places if we go there for the primary purpose.

"Church, Mosque, Temple, School, College, Court, Prison, Hospital, Library, University, Jail (as accused)."

For Ex - (a) I went to the temple to worship. (Wrong)

I went to temple to worship. (Correct)

(b) I went to the temple to attend a marriage. (Correct)

In the above sentences, we did not use 'The' with 'Temple' as long as the purpose of our visit was primary. (ie, to worship) But, as soon as the purpose of visit changed from primary to something else (ie. From worship to marriage). The use of definite article (ie. The) becomes 'legit'.

6. Definite Article does not come before 'Northern', 'Southern', 'Eastern', 'Western' and 'directions' when we use them as adjective.

For Ex - (a) He is going towards Northern India.

(b) Rajasthan is in western India.

Exercise

Directions: Read each sentence to find out whether there is any grammatical error in it. The error, if any, will be in one part of the sentence. The number of that part is the answer. If there is no error, the answer is '4' i.e. No error. (Ignore the errors of xon, if any).

1. Number of intelligent students (a)/is good but none of the students are (b)/ obliged to their teachers. (c)/ No error (d)
2. Ganga is one of the (a)/longest rivers which (b)/originate from the Himalayas. (c)/No error (d)
3. Sumit said that he was ^{an} employee of (a)/the gas company and (b)/had come to read the meter. (c)/No error (d)
4. Professor Singh, ^{me} a man who (a)/discovered the new drug that everyone is talking about, (b)/refused to give a press conference. (c)/No error (d)
5. One of my friends advised me to take (a)/a taxi, another said that (b)/there was quite ^a good bus-service. (c)/No error (d)
6. Never have I seen such ^a girl in my life (a)/because she is too (b)/beautiful to be described. (c)/No error (d)
7. Last night I bought (a)/a pen, an inkpot, a pencil and ~~a~~ soap (b)/from a stationary store. (c)/No error (d)
8. Surdas is often called (a)/Milton of India although unlike (b)/Milton, Surdas had no political ambitions. (c)/No error (d) ^{the}
9. Sujit is ^{the} friend (a)/of Amir's but (b)/he is living a miserable life these days. (c)/No error (d)
10. In ^{me} a history of Indian (a)/rulers, Harsvardhan's regime of (b)/a few years is one of the best periods. (c)/No error (d)
11. It is only after (a)/ ^{the} war is over (b)/that ^{me} people realize how bad it was. (c)/ No error (d)
12. Of the two (a)/ answers, this (b)/ is definitely better (c)/ No error (d)
13. There were ^{me} a number (a)/ of pretty girls in the party but it was Ragini (b)/ who remained a centre of attraction. (c)/ No error (d)
14. He is the best artist (a)/ of the ^{me} time but unfortunately (b)/ least recognized. (c)/ No error (d)
15. I don't like that type of ~~a~~ man (a)/ who does nothing but (b)/ find out faults in others. (c)/ No error (d)
16. He claims to be a linguist (a)/but, in reality, he does not know even (b)/the A B C of linguistics. (c)/No error (d)
17. A first step in ^{me} a rational solution (a)/ to any problem is the (b)/ recognition of the fact that a problem exists. (c)/ No error (d)
18. It was (a)/ ^{me} by mistake (b)/ that he caught her hand. (c)/ No error (d)
19. There orders of the Manager (a)/ may put the lives of (b)/ two thousand workers in ~~a~~ danger. (c)/ No error (d)
20. The most happy marriage would be (a)/ ^{me} a union of a deaf (b)/ man to a blind woman. (c)/ No error (d)
21. John suggested to his brothers that they should (a)/ go to ~~the~~ school regularly (b)/ and do their home work sincerely. (c)/ No error (d)
22. His father forbade him to go (a)/ to ^{me} cinema (b)/ late at night. (c)/ No error (d)
23. There was little (a)/ milk in the bottle and she gave it (b)/ to the baby when it started weeping. (c)/ No error (d)
24. Thanks to ^{me} an insight and persistence of the local doctor (a)/ hundreds of victims have been (b)/ able to resume a normal life. (c)/ No error (d)
25. One should be true to one's promises (a)/ in order to earn (b)/ name and fame in ~~the~~ life. (c)/ No error (d)

26. The loss of jobs (a)/ is regarded by some as ^a necessary evil (b)/ in the fight against inflation. (c)/ No error. (d)
27. It is ^a (a)/ quarter to ten (b)/ by my watch. (c)/ No error.
28. Gita doesn't usually (a)/ wear jewelry but yesterday (b)/ ^{she} wore ring. (c)/ No error (d)
29. The police asked us (a)/ about our movements (b)/ on ^a night of crime. (c)/ No error. (d)
30. In science the credit goes to ^{the} man (a)/ who convinces the world, (c)/ not to the man to whom the idea first occurs. (c)/ No error (d)
31. It is only after (a)/ the match is over (b)/ that people realize (c)/ how exciting it is. No error (d)
32. Of the two (a)/ sisters, she (b)/ is better. (c)/ No error. (d)
33. It is unfortunate enough (a)/ to lose ^{few} friends we make (b)/ during our school days. (c)/ No error. (d)
34. There were a number of intelligent gentlemen at the party (a)/ but it was Mr. Subramaniam, an eminent scientist, (b)/ who remained ^a center of attraction. (c)/ No error (d)
35. I have been (a)/ informed that (b)/ Mr. Sharma, the director and ^{the} chairman will visit Patna the following month. (c)/ No error. (d)
36. He is (a)/ the best worker (b)/ of the factory but unfortunately ^{he} least paid. (c)/ No error. (d)
37. He has come out (a)/ with ^a unique proposal (b)/ for his friends. (c)/ No error (d)
38. When the house was (a)/ set on the fire, all the people (b)/ started shouting at the top of their voices. (c)/ No error. (d)
39. Little knowledge (a)/ of medicine that he possessed / (c) proved to be a blessing for him when he was in great pain. / (d) No error.
40. It was (a)/ by a mistake (b)/ that he injured her hand. (c)/ No error. (d)
41. These orders of (a)/ the Manager (b)/ may put the lives of two thousand workers in a danger. (c)/ No error. (d)
42. The happiest (a)/ marriage would be (b)/ ^a union of a deaf man and a blind woman. (c)/ No error. (d)
43. John suggested to (a)/ the children of his village that they should (b)/ go to the school regularly and do their homework sincerely. (c)/ No error. (d)
44. Some people say that (a)/ her husband is in the jail (b)/ and so she lives alone. (c)/ No error. (d)
45. His father (a)/ asked him to go (b)/ to ^{the} temple every morning. (c)/ No error (d)
46. There was little (a)/ milk in the refrigerator and she gave it (b)/ to her crying son. (c)/ No error. (d)
47. Terrorist organizations (a)/ kill innocent people (b)/ to spread ^a violence. (c)/ No error (d)
48. ^{The} whole world is (a)/ today facing the threat of extinction (b)/ due to the inventions of science. (c)/ No error (d)
49. The answer (a)/ to all the sufferings of (b)/ human beings lies in ^{the} Science. (c)/ No error (d)
50. This is (a)/ most important (b)/ lesson which we will have to study very carefully. (c)/ No error. (d)
51. I like to travel (a)/ by ^{the} air as (b)/ I am a very busy person. (c)/ No error. (d)
52. She found (a)/ herself in ^a trouble (b)/ when she saw the stalker following her persistently (c). / No error.
53. All the people (a)/ of India know that (b)/ Gandhi ji was a very wise and ^a noble soul. (c)/ No error (d)
54. ^{The} man (a)/ is the only creature (b)/ that is endowed with the art of humor. (c)/ No error. (c)
55. Akbar became a heir (a)/ to the throne at (b)/ a young age of thirteen (c)/ No error. (d)

Solutions

1. (a) Use 'the Number of' in place of 'the number of'.

The Number of + PCN + SV
A Number of + PCN + PV

Number of students is fifty here. (x)

The number of students is fifty here. (✓)

The number of students have come. (x)

A number of students have come. (✓)

2. (a) Use 'the' before 'Ganga'. 'The' is used with the name of rivers.

3. (a) Use 'an' before 'employee'.

4. (a) Use 'the man' in place of 'a man'.

5. (c) Use 'quite a good bus service' in place of 'quite good bus service'.

Structure

quite/such + a/an + Adjective + SCN
So /how + adjective ++ a /an + SCN

Payal is so a good girl. (x)

Payal is so good a girl. (✓)

Payal is such a good girl. (x)

Such long journey. (✓)

Such long a journey. (x)

Such a long journey. (✓)

6. (a) Use 'Such a girl' in place of 'such girl'.

7. (b) Use of 'a soap' is wrong here because 'soap' is an uncountable noun.

8. (b) Use 'the' before 'Milton'.

9. (a) Use 'a friend' in place of 'the friend'.

10. (a) Use 'In the history' in place of 'In a history'.

11. (b) Use 'a' in place of 'the'. "The war" means 'some specific war'.

12. (c) Use 'the' before 'better'.

13. (c) Use 'the' in place of 'a'. The is used before construction of (Noun + of + noun).

14. (c) Use 'the' before 'least'.

15. (a) Remove 'a'.

16. (d) No error.

17. (a) Use 'the first step' in place of 'a first step'.

18. (b) Remove 'a'. 'By mistake' is used as an idiom.

19. (c) Remove 'a'.

20. (b) Use 'the union' in place of 'a union'.

21. (b) Remove 'the' before 'school'.

22. (b) Use 'the' before 'cinema'.

23. (a) Use 'a' before 'little'.

24. (a) Use 'the' in place of 'an'.

25. (c) Remove 'the' before 'life'.

26. (b) Use a necessary evil

27. (b) remove A, we should not use A prior to Quarter to ten
28. (c) ring is singular countable noun, so use a ring
29. (c) night of crime, its definite time, so use THE. on the night of crime.
30. (a) the man will be used because that man will be particular one
31. (b) here it is not mentioned which match, so use A instead of THE
32. (c) if we need to choose one in between two, then with comparative degree we use THE, so THE better is Right
33. (d) use THE, because here we are talking about those friends which me made in our school days, and those are particular ones also. and those are countable, so use the few
34. (c) the center of attraction
35. (c) here Mr. Sharma has two designations, so use the only before the director. Not before the chairman, it we use the director and the chairman it means there are two persons.
36. (c) least is superlative degree of LESS, so use THE before least. THE LEAST is right
37. (b) Unique, yunik, so use a instead of an
38. (b) to lose heart, to set foot, to give ear, at home, last but not least, to catch fire, in hand, set on fire, by car/bus etc, at last, by mistake, in danger, to take heart. THESE ARE THE PHRASAL VERBS WITH WHICH WE DONT USE ARTICLES
39. (a) the little or a little both right.
40. (b) to lose heart, to set foot, to give ear, at home, last but not least, to catch fire, in hand, set on fire, by car/bus etc, at last, by mistake, in danger, to take heart. THESE ARE THE PHRASAL VERBS WITH WHICH WE DONT USE ARTICLES
41. (b) to lose heart, to set foot, to give ear, at home, last but not least, to catch fire, in hand, set on fire, by car/bus etc, at last, by mistake, in danger, to take heart. THESE ARE THE PHRASAL VERBS WITH WHICH WE DONT USE ARTICLES
42. (c) Use THE union
43. (c) When we go to some particular place for some particular reason, we don't use THE with them
44. (b) When we go to some particular place for some particular reason, we don't use THE with them
45. (c) When we go to some particular place for some particular reason, we don't use THE with them
46. (a) Add 'A' before little
47. (c) VIOLENCE is uncountable, so remove A
48. (a) use THE prior to WHOLE
49. (c) Remove THE
50. (b) Use THE before most
51. (b) Remove THE
52. (b) Remove A
53. (c) Gandhi ji was a very wise and noble soul.
54. (a) here man means all human beings, so THE not Required here.
55. (a) an heir or the heir both right

Question Tag

A question tag or tag question (also known as tail question) is a grammatical structure in which a declarative statement or an imperative is turned into a question by adding an interrogative fragment (the "tag"). Example-

- (1) Seema is cooking, isn't she?
- (2) Ram was running a race, wasn't he?
- (3) They have played chess, haven't they?
- (4) She will not come today, will she?
- (5) He did not go there, did he?

Underlined words are examples of question tag.

Rules:

- (1) Question tag is always made with the help of helping verb. Example-
Doesn't, didn't, couldn't, haven't, shan't, aren't etc.
- (2) If the given statement is negative then question tag will be positive and if the given statement is positive then tag will be negative. Example-

↓	↓
Positive sentence	Negative tag

 (a) She is running a race, isn't she?

↓	↓
Negative statement	Positive tag

 (b) He could not win the match, could he?
- (3) Question tag is never made by using 'noun'. 'Pronoun' is used to make question tag. Example-
 (a) Ram has submitted the file, hasn't he?
 (b) Pooja can come today, can't she?
 (c) Manoj is not a doctor, is he?
- (4) If the Subject in the given statement is no one, none, anyone, someone, everyone, everybody, somebody or nobody, then the subject of the question tag will be 'they'.
 (1) None can solve this sum, can they?
 (2) Anyone can come here, can't they?
 (3) Someone criticized me, didn't they?
- (5) If the Subject in the given statement is nothing, anything, something or everything, then the subject of the question tag will be 'it'.
 (a) Everything is fine, isn't it?
 (b) Something was missing, wasn't it?
 (c) Nothing can't be seen, can it?
- (6) Question tag of 'I am' will be 'aren't I?' and question tag of 'I am not' will be 'am I?'
 (a) I am reading a book, aren't I?
 (b) I am not your teacher, am I?
- (7) Some words are used in negative sense. Question tag of such words is made in positive sense. Such words are-
 Few, little, neither, none, no one, nothing, hardly, rarely, seldom, scarcely.

Example-

- (a) No one can read this, **can they?**
- (b) None is present here, **are they?**
- (c) They said nothing for him, **did they?**
- (d) She rarely tells a lie, **does she?**
- (8) If any statement starts with let's (Let us) then its question tag will be '**shall we?**'

Example-

- (a) Let's play chess, **shall we?**
- (b) Let's watch a movie, **shall we?**

But if the statement starts with Let you/ let them/ let him etc. then the Question tag will be 'will you'.

Example-

- (a) Let they plan, will you?
- (b) Let him sleep, will you?
- (c) Let her read, will you?

Exercise

Fill in the blanks with suitable question tags:

1. Payal did not come in time,
2. Sanu and Panu did not go there,
3. I am rich,
4. We find a large number of men waiting at the bus stand,
5. I can drive a car,
6. You often go to your teacher,
7. The poor boy has no chance of success,
8. Ramesh has little knowledge of English,
9. Few students were present there,
10. Let the children go out,
11. Let him do that,
12. Let's finish this work now,
13. Don't be disappointed,
14. Somebody has beaten the cow,
15. Anyone can easily break the gate,
16. He isn't going to do it,
17. You enjoyed that,
18. He doesn't write very well,
19. We love it,
20. It doesn't work,

Solutions

1.	did she?	2.	did they?	3.	aren't I?	4.	don't we?	5.	can't I?
6.	don't you?	7.	has he?	8.	has he?	9.	were they?	10.	will you?
11.	will you?	12.	shall we?	13.	will you?	14.	haven't they?	15.	can't they?
16.	is he?	17.	didn't you?	18.	does he?	19.	don't we?	20.	does it?

Example-

- (a) No one can read this, **can they?**
- (b) None is present here, **are they?**
- (c) They said nothing for him, **did they?**
- (d) She rarely tells a lie, **does she?**
- (e) If any statement starts with let's (Let us) then its question tag will be 'shall we?'

Example-

- (a) Let's play chess, **shall we?**
- (b) Let's watch a movie, **shall we?**

But if the statement starts with Let you/ let them/ let him etc. then the Question tag will be 'will you'.

Example-

- (a) Let them plan, **will you?**
- (b) Let him sleep, **will you?**
- (c) Let her read, **will you?**

Exercise

Fill in the blanks with suitable question tags:

1. Payal did not come in time,
2. Sanu and Panu did not go there,
3. I am rich,
4. We find a large number of men waiting at the bus stand,
5. I can drive a car,
6. You often go to your teacher,
7. The poor boy has no chance of success,
8. Ramesh has little knowledge of English,
9. Few students were present there,
10. Let the children go out,
11. Let him do that,
12. Let's finish this work now,
13. Don't be disappointed,
14. Somebody has beaten the cow,
15. Anyone can easily break the gate,
16. He isn't going to do it,
17. You enjoyed that,
18. He doesn't write very well,
19. We love it,
20. It doesn't work,

Solutions

1.	did she?	2.	did they?	3.	aren't I?	4.	don't we?	5.	can't I?
6.	don't you?	7.	has he?	8.	has he?	9.	were they?	10.	will you?
11.	will you?	12.	shall we?	13.	will you?	14.	haven't they?	15.	can't they?
16.	is he?	17.	didn't you?	18.	does he?	19.	don't we?	20.	does it?

Active & Passive Voice

Let's know more about active and passive voice.

Active Voice

In active voice, the subject always performs the action related by the verb.

Likewise:

- Mohan flies kite.
- He has drunk whole milk.
- You are writing a nice novel.

Here, Mohan, He, you are subjects and flies, drunk, writing are action related by the verb.

Passive Voice

In passive voice, the subject always receives the action related by the verb.

Likewise:

- Kite is flown by Mohan.
- Whole milk has been drunk by him.
- A nice novel is being written by you.

Here, kite, whole milk, a nice novel are objects and flown, drunk and written are action related by the verb.

A. Change of subject of active sentence into object of passive is done as per the following table.

ActiveVoice	PassiveVoice	ActiveVoice	PassiveVoice
I	me	we	us
he	him	they	them
she	her	it	it
you	you	who	whom

→ Only transitive verbs (those take objects) can be transformed into passive voice.

Tense	Verb (Active)	Verb (Passive) To be form + V-III
Simple present	do/does	am/is/are
Simple past	did	was/were
Simple future	shall/will	shall be/will be
Present continuous	is/am/are	is/am/are being
Past continuous	was/were	was/were being
Present perfect	has/have	has/have been
Past perfect	had	had been
Future perfect	will/shall have	will/shall have been

Rules to Make a Passive Voice

- The passive voice of an active voice is formed by using the verb 'to be'. However, the original active verb must be converted into past participle.
- Object may be placed before the verb in passive expression.
- The construction of these sentences may be represented as follows
 - Subject + Transitive verb + Object [Active voice]
 - Object + to be + PP of Transitive verb + Subject [Passive voice]
 - Subject + Intransitive verb [Active voice]

Use of the verb 'To be'

1. As an auxiliary verb it is used with other verbs both in active and passive voice.
2. As an ordinary verb it is used in 'No verb' sentences.

Forms of 'to be'	Related Tenses	Forms of Verb in 'to be' Passive
To be	Infinitive, Modals, Future Indefinite	PP (Past Participle)
is, am, are	Present Indefinite	
was/were been	Past Indefinite, Perfect (Present, Past, Future)	
Being	Continuous (Present, Past), Participle	

The use of 'to be' is made in the passive sentences.

- (1) Infinitive,
 - (a) She doesn't like to be insulted.
 - (b) All the students should be taught English.
 - (c) He will be punished for his misbehaviour.
- (2) Modals,
- (3) Future Indefinite
 - (a) She doesn't like to be insulted.
 - (b) All the students should be taught English.
 - (c) He will be punished for his misbehaviour.
- (4) Present Indefinite, am, are
 - (a) FIFA World cup is held every four years.
 - (b) I am invited to attend party by my friend.
- (5) Past Indefinite Was, were
 - (a) Shalini was punished for her negligence.
 - (b) Both the friends were selected for senior badminton team.
- (6) Perfect (Present, Past, Future) Been
 - (a) Rawat has been elected as a member of the committee.
 - (b) She had already been admitted to hospital.
 - (c) Her friend will have been married by now.
- (7) Continuous (Present, Past)
- (8) Participle Being
 - (a) The match is being telecast live.
 - (b) Nobody likes being robbed.

→ Future continuous and perfect continuous tenses do not admit of passive voice expressions.

Rules to Change the Voice

To change a sentence from active to passive voice the following steps are involved.

- (1) To change the object into a subject if object is the pronoun change it as follows

Me	I
You	you
Her	she
Us	we
Him	he
It	it
Whom	who

- (2) Change the subject into object by using 'by'

I	by me
We	by us
You	by you
He	by him
She	by her
It	by it
They	by them
Who	by whom

- (3) The verb is changed according to the tense
- (a) Present Indefinite Tense
(Change into - Is/ Am/ Are + Past Participle of Verb)
 - (b) Present Continuous Tense
(Change into - Is/ Am/ Are + Being + Past Participle of Verb)
 - (c) Present Perfect Tense
(Change into - Has/ Have + Been + Past Participle of Verb)
 - (d) Past Indefinite Tense
(Change into - Was/ Were + Past Participle of Verb)
 - (e) Past Continuous Tense
(Change into - Was/ Were + Being + Past Participle of Verb)
 - (f) Past Perfect Tense
(Change into - Had + Been + Past Participle of verb)
 - (g) Future Indefinite Tense
(Change into - Shall be/ Will be + Past Participle of Verb)
 - (h) Future Perfect Tense
(Change into - Shall have been/ Will have been + Past Participle of Verb)
 - (i) Verb Followed by Modals
In those sentences which carry modals like can, could, should, would, must etc., 'be' is used between the modal and the third form of verb the passive voice.
 - (j) Imperative sentence
In changing imperative sentence to passive voice the following rules are observed
 - (1) Let + new object + be/ not be + 3rd form of verb
 - (2) According to the idea of the sentence we use phrases like you are requested to/ advised to/ ordered to etc.
 - (3) Words such as kindly or please are deleted.

did
had been

Exercise

Directions : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Active/Passive Voice. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Passive/ Active Voice and mark your answer in the Answer Sheet.

1. Our task had been completed before sunset.
 - (a) We completed our task before sunset.
 - (b) We have completed our task before sunset.
 - (c) We complete our task before sunset.
 - (d) We had completed our task before sunset.
2. The boy laughed at the beggar. *Active*
 - (a) The beggar was laughed by the boy.
 - (b) The beggar was being laughed by the boy.
 - (c) The beggar was being laughed at by the boy.
 - (d) The beggar was laughed at by the boy.
3. The government has launched a massive tribal welfare programme in Jharkhand.
 - (a) A massive tribal welfare programme is launched by the government in Jharkhand.
 - (b) A massive tribal welfare programme has been launched by the government in Jharkhand.
 - (c) Jharkhand government has launched a massive tribal welfare programme.
 - (d) The government in Jharkhand has launched a massive tribal welfare programme.
4. The boys were playing cricket.
 - (a) Cricket had been played by the boys.
 - (b) Cricket has been played by the boys.
 - (c) Cricket was played by the boys.
 - (d) Cricket was being played by the boys.

5. They drew a circle in the morning.
- A circle was being drawn by them in the morning.
 - A circle was drawn by them in the morning.
 - In the morning a circle have been drawn by them.
 - A circle has been drawing since morning.
6. They will demolish the entire block.
- The entire block is being demolished.
 - The block may be demolished entirely.
 - The entire block will have to be demolished by them.
 - The entire block will be demolished by them.
7. The burglar destroyed several items in the room. Even the carpet has been torn.
- Several items destroyed in the room by the burglar. Even the carpet he has torn.
 - Several items in the room were destroyed by the burglar. He has torn even the carpet.
 - Including the carpet, several items in the room have been torn by the burglar.
 - The burglar, being destroyed several items in the room, also carpet has torn.
8. We must respect the elders.
- The elders deserve respect from us.
 - The elders must be respected.
 - The elders must be respected by us.
 - Respect the elders we must.
9. We have warned you.
- You have been warned.
 - We have you warned.
 - Warned you have been.
 - Have you been warned.
10. Has anybody answered your question?
- Your question has been answered?
 - Anybody has answered your question?
 - Has your question been answered?
 - Have you answered your question?
11. The shopkeeper lowered the prices.
- The prices lowered the shopkeeper.
 - The prices were lowered by the shopkeeper.
 - Down went the prices.
 - The shopkeeper got down the prices.
12. One must keep one's promises.
- One's promises are kept.
 - One's promises must kept.
 - One's promises were kept.
 - One's promises must be kept.
13. The government has not approved the new drug for sale.
- The government approval for the sale of the new drug has not been given.
 - The new drug has not been approved for sale by the government.
 - For the sale of the new drug we have not been given the approval.
 - The new drug was not approved by the government.
14. They have published all the details of the invention.
- All the details of the invention have been published by them.
 - The publication of the details of invention was done by them.
 - All the details have been invented by the publishers.
 - All the inventions have been detailed by them.
15. He teaches us grammar.
- Grammar was taught to us by him.
 - We are taught grammar by him.
 - Grammar will be taught to us by him.
 - We were taught grammar by him.

16. The manager could not accept the union leader's proposals.
 (a) The union leader's proposals could not be accepted by the manager.
 (b) The union leader's proposals were not accepted by the manager.
 (c) The union leader's proposals will not be accepted by the manager.
 (d) The union leader's proposals would not be accepted by the manager.
17. Prepare yourself for the worst.
 (a) You be prepared for the worst.
 (b) The worst should be prepared by yourself.
 (c) Be prepared for the worst.
 (d) For the worst, preparation should be made by you.
18. Please shut the door and go to sleep.
 (a) The door is to be shut and you are to go to sleep.
 (b) Let the door be shut and you be asleep.
 (c) You are requested to shut the door and go to sleep.
 (d) The door is to be shut and you are requested to sleep.
19. It is impossible to do this.
 (a) Doing this is impossible.
 (b) This is impossible to be done.
 (c) This most not be done.
 (d) This can't be done.
20. We must take care of all living species on Earth.
 (a) All living species on Earth are taken care of by us.
 (b) All living species on Earth must be taken care of by us.
 (c) All living species on Earth had been taken care of by us.
 (d) All living species on Earth will be taken care of by us.
21. He gently tapped on my hand.
 (a) I was gently tapped on my hand by him.
 (b) It was my hand that was gently tapped by him.
 (c) My hand had been gently tapped by him.
 (d) Gently was my hand being tapped by him.
22. Amit was nominated by my cousin for the post.
 (a) My cousin nominated Amit for the post.
 (b) My Cousin has nominated Amit for the post.
 (c) My Cousin nominates Amit for the post.
 (d) My Cousin is nominating Amit for the post.
23. Do not inform the police about the robbery.
 (a) The police do not be informed about the robbery.
 (b) Let not the police be informed about the robbery.
 (c) Let the police be informed about the robbery.
 (d) The police need to be informed by the robbery.
24. Grandfather was digging the flowerbeds.
 (a) The flowerbeds were digging grandfather.
 (b) The flowerbeds were being dug by grandfather.
 (c) Grandfather's flowerbeds were being dug.
 (d) The grandfather was digging flowerbeds.
25. Who taught you grammar?
 (a) By whom you were taught grammar?

- (b) By whom were you taught grammar?
- (c) By whom was grammar you taught?
- (d) By whom were grammar taught to you?
26. The lightning caused a serious forest fire and damaged many nearby houses.
- (a) A serious forest fire has been caused by lightning and many nearby houses have been damaged.
- (b) A serious forest fire was caused by lightning and many houses are damaged.
- (c) A serious forest fire had been caused by lightning and many nearby houses had been damaged.
- (d) A serious forest fire was caused by lightning and many nearby houses were damaged.
27. This unexpected news surprised me a great deal.
- (a) I was surprised a great deal by this unexpected news
- (b) I am surprised a great deal by this unexpected news
- (c) I have been surprised a great deal by this unexpected news
- (d) I had been surprised a great deal by this unexpected news
28. We saw him steal
- (a) He was seen to steal by me.
- (b) He was seen to steal.
- (c) He were seen to steal by us.
- (d) He was seen to steal by us.
29. Have you been shown what to do?
- (a) Have anybody been shown by you what to do?
- (b) Have anybody been showing you-what to do?
- (c) Has you been shown what to do?
- (d) Has anybody shown you what to do?
30. We expect all our students to do well
- (a) All our students to do well is expect by us.
- (b) All are students is expecting by us to do well.
- (c) All our students to do well is to be expected by us.
- (d) All our students to do well is expected by us.
31. I am trying to contact him.
- (a) He is being tried to contact by me.
- (b) Contacting him is being tried by me.
- (c) He tried to contact me.
- (d) He is being contacting me.
32. The teacher may punish you.
- (a) You should be punished by the teacher
- (b) You shall have been punished by the teacher
- (c) You will be punished by the teacher
- (d) You may be punished by the teacher
33. All your needs will be taken care of at our institute, Pinnacle.
- (a) Our institute, Pinnacle will take care of all your needs.
- (b) Our institute, Pinnacle will be taking care of all your needs.
- (c) Our institute, Pinnacle will have taken care of all your needs.
- (d) Our institute, Pinnacle will have cared for all your needs.

34. Please shut the door and go to sleep.
 (a) The door is to be shut and you are to go to sleep.
 (b) Let the door be shut and you be asleep.
 (c) You are requested to shut the door and go to sleep.
 (d) The door is to be shut and you are requested to sleep.
35. Citrus peel tastes bitter.
 (a) Citrus peel is bitter when it is tasted.
 (b) Citrus peel is bitter when tasted.
 (c) Citrus peel has a bitter taste.
 (d) Citrus peel is tasted bitterly.
36. Deforestation has reduced rainfall in the tropical lands.
 (a) Rainfall has been reduced and caused deforestation.
 (b) Reduced rainfall deforested the tropical lands.
 (c) Rainfall has been reduced due to deforestation in tropical lands.
 (d) Tropical lands have been reduced by rainfall.
37. Did everybody miss the first bus?
 (a) The first bus was missed by everybody?
 (b) Was the first bus missed by everybody?
 (c) Everybody missed the first bus?
 (d) Had the first bus been missed by everybody?
38. A letter has been written by me.
 (a) I have been writing a letter.
 (b) I has written a letter.
 (c) I had written a letter.
 (d) I have written a letter.
39. The doctor advised me to give up sweets.
 (a) To me give up sweets was advised by doctor.
 (b) The doctor advised to give up sweets me.
 (c) I was advised by the doctor to give up sweets.
 (d) I was advised to give up eat sweets by the doctor.
40. The storm has destroyed twelve houses.
 (a) Twelve houses had been destroyed by the storm.
 (b) Twelve houses have been destroyed by the storm.
 (c) Twelve houses were destroyed by the storm.
 (d) Twelve houses have been stormed.
41. It interests me.
 (a) I am interested in it.
 (b) I was interested in it.
 (c) I will be interested in it.
 (d) I have been interested in it.
42. The boy has rung the bell.
 (a) The bell has been rung by the boy.
 (b) The bell was being rung by the boy.
 (c) The bell was rung by the boy.
 (d) The bell has been being rung by the boy.

43. The gardener ought to water the plants daily.
 (a) The plants have been watered daily by the gardener.
 (b) The plants ought to water daily by the gardener.
 (c) The plants are ought to water daily by the gardener.
 (d) The plants ought to be watered daily by the gardener.
44. She has preserved all the old letters of her dead lover.
 (a) All the old letters of her dead lover have been preserved by her.
 (b) All the old letters of her dead lover has been preserved by her.
 (c) All the old letters have been preserved.
 (d) The letters of her old lover have been preserved
45. Champagne is drunk on New Year's Eve.
 (a) People drink champagne on New Year's Eve.
 (b) Let us drink champagne on New Year's Eve.
 (c) They will drink champagne on New Year's Eve.
 (d) People always drink champagne on New Year's Eve.
46. I am going to bring him here.
 (a) He is going to bring here by me.
 (b) He is being brought here by me.
 (c) He is going to be brought here by me.
 (d) He is being gone to be brought here by me.
47. Who asked you to draft this letter?
 (a) By who you are asked to draft this letter.
 (b) By who have you been asked to draft this letter.
 (c) By whom were you asked to draft this, letter?
 (d) By whom you were asked to draft this letter.
48. The terrorists should be hanged.
 (a) They should have hanged the terrorists.
 (b) They will hang the terrorists.
 (c) One should hang the terrorists.
 (d) They hanged the terrorists.
49. Our Almighty will bless wise men.
 (a) Wise men will be blessed by our Almighty.
 (b) Wise men should be blessed by our Almighty.
 (c) Wise men have been blessed by our Almighty.
 (d) Wise men would be blessed by our Almighty.
50. The Swiss regarded him as an imposter and called him a Villain.
 (a) He was regarded as an imposter and was called a Villain by the Swiss.
 (b) He is regarded as an imposter and was called a Villain by the Swiss.
 (c) He was regarded as an imposter and is called a Villain by the Swiss.
 (d) He has been regarded as an imposter and called a Villain by the Swiss.
51. She is reading a novel.
 (a) A novel is being read by her.
 (b) A novel has been read by her.
 (c) A novel is read by her.
 (d) A novel was being read by her.
52. They fund schools for girls.
 (a) Schools for girls was funded by them.
 (b) Schools for girls will be funded by them.
 (c) Schools for girls are funded by them.
 (d) Schools for girls are being funded by them.

53. The security guards had blocked every exit.
 (a) Every exit had been blocked by the security guards.
 (b) Every exit has been blocked by the security guards.
 (c) Every exit was blocked by the security guards.
 (d) Every exit was being blocked by the security guards.
54. My mother bakes cakes.
 (a) A cake was baked by my mother.
 (b) My mother is baking a cake.
 (c) A cake is being baked by my mother.
 (d) Cakes are baked by my mother.
55. The accountant took the money from the customer.
 (a) The money is taken from the customer by the accountant.
 (b) The money was taken from the customer by the accountant.
 (c) The customer was taken the money by the accountant.
 (d) The money had been taken from the customer by the accountant.
56. Not a word was spoken by the criminal in self-defense.
 (a) The criminal spoke not a word in self-defense.
 (b) The criminal in self-defense spoke no word.
 (c) The criminal did not speak a word in self-defense.
 (d) The criminal spoke in self-defense not a word.
57. Bipin was not told about the meeting.
 (a) Somebody did not tell Bipin about the meeting.
 (b) There was nobody who could tell Bipin about the meeting.
 (c) Nobody told Bipin about the meeting.
 (d) The meeting was not told about to Bipin.
58. I have to do my homework.
 (a) My homework has to be done by me.
 (b) My homework to be done.
 (c) My homework has been done by me.
 (d) My homework has been done.
59. The driver was blowing the horn.
 (a) The horn was blown by the driver.
 (b) The horn was being blown by the driver.
 (c) The horn has been blown by the driver.
 (d) The horn is being blown by the driver.
60. I bought a new dress last month.
 (a) Last month a new dress was bought by I.
 (b) Last month a new dress was bought by me.
 (c) Last month a new dress is bought by me.
 (d) Last month a new dress had been bought by me.

Solutions

1.	d	2.	d	3.	b	4.	d	5.	b
6.	d	7.	b	8.	c	9.	a	10.	c
11.	b	12.	d	13.	b	14.	a	15.	b
16.	a	17.	c	18.	c	19.	b	20.	b
21.	a	22.	a	23.	b	24.	b	25.	b
26.	d	27.	a	28.	d	29.	d	30.	b
31.	a	32.	d	33.	a	34.	c	35.	a
36.	c	37.	b	38.	d	39.	c	40.	b
41.	a	42.	a	43.	d	44.	a	45.	a
46.	c	47.	c	48.	c	49.	a	50.	a
51.	a	52.	c	53.	a	54.	d	55.	b
56.	c	57.	c	58.	a	59.	b	60.	b

Narration

Direct Narration: In Direct Narration the words of the speaker are exactly said in his words. What a speaker says, his words are mentioned within the quotation marks ("....."). The speaker's words should be unaltered.

Example: She said, "Travelling is one of my hobbies." Or 'Travelling is one of my hobbies.', she said.

Indirect Narration: In Indirect Narration the words of the speaker are not exactly said in his words. What a speaker says, his words are not mentioned within the quotation marks. The speaker's words will be altered slightly.

Example: She said that Travelling was one of her hobbies.

Reporter/ Reporting Verb/ Reported Speech

Reporter The speaker or narrator is called the 'reporter'

Reporting Verb The verb used by the 'reporter' is called reporting verb.

Reported Speech Sentence enclosed within the inverted commas (".....") is called reported speech.

She said to me, 'I am learning math'.

In this sentence "She (reporter) said (reporting verb)" and 'I am learning math.' (reported speech).

Reported speech always begins with a capital letter and enclosed within the inverted commas (' ') while we change a narration from direct to indirect, the inverted commas are removed.

Some Important Rules

First of all ascertain the tense of the 'Reporting verb'.

- If the reporting verb is in present or future tense. The tense of reported speech remains unchanged.
- If the reporting verb changes as following

Reporting verb in direct speech	Reporting verb in indirect speech
Say	Say
Says	Says
Say to	Tell
Says to	Tells
Will say	Will say
Will say to	Will tell
Said	Said

Effective Steps to Solve such Questions

Candidates are suggested to memorise the following points which are very important to solve such questions effectively.

- While changing into indirect speech the personal pronouns are changed as per the following rules.
 - First Person Pronoun According to subject to reporting verb.
 - Second Person Pronoun According to object of reporting verb.
 - Third Person Pronoun No change

Reporting Verb in the Past

- If the reporting verb is in 'past' the tense of the reported speech changes as following

Tense of Reported Speech

Direct Narration	Indirect Narration
Present Indefinite	Past Indefinite
Present Continuous	Past Continuous
Present Perfect	Past Perfect
Present Perfect Continuous	Past Perfect Continuous
Past Indefinite	Past Perfect
Past Continuous	Past Perfect Continuous
Past Perfect	No change of tense
Past Perfect Continuous	No change of tense

(Change in Future Sentences (Reported Speech

Will/Shall	Would/Should
Can	Could
May	Might
Could/Should/Would/Might	No change

(3) Change in narration is done as following

Direct Narration	Indirect Narration
This	That
These	Those
Here	There
Hence	Thence
Hither	Thither
Now	Then
Ago	Before
Thus	So
Today	That day
Tomorrow	The next day/the following day
Yesterday	The previous day
Last week/month/year	The previous week/month/year
The last fort night	The previous fort night
The day before Yesterday	The day before the previous day

Therefore, you should learn all the points well in order to solve the questions quickly with accuracy.

Rules for Changing Direct Speech into Indirect

- When the reporting or principal verb is in the past tense, all present tenses of the direct are changed into the corresponding past tenses. Thus,
 - A simple present becomes a simple past.
(Direct) Ram said, "I am happy".
(Indirect) Ram said that he was happy.
 - A present continuous becomes a past continuous.
(Direct) He said, "My younger brother is writing an essay".
(Indirect) He said that his younger brother was writing an essay.
 - A present perfect becomes a past perfect.
(Direct) He said, "I have completed my homework.

(Indirect) He said that he had completed his homework.

→ Shall of the future tense is changed into should. The will of the future tense is changed into would or should. As a rule, the simple past in the direct becomes the past perfect in the indirect.

(Direct) He said, "The horse died in the night".

(Indirect) He said that the horse had died in the night.

2. If the reporting verb is in the present tense, the tenses of the direct speech do not change.
3. The pronouns of the direct speech are changed, where necessary, so that their relations with the reporter and its listener rather than with the original speaker, are indicated. E.g.,

(Direct) He said to me, "I don't believe you."

(Indirect) He said he didn't believe me.

(Direct) I said to him, "I don't smoke."

(Indirect) I said I didn't smoke.

4. Words expressing nearness in time or place are generally changed into words expressing distance.

Hence,

Now	Changes into	Then
Here	Changes into	There
Ago	Changes into	Before
Thus	Changes into	So
Today	Changes into	That day
Tomorrow	Changes into	The next day
Yesterday	Changes into	The day before
Last night	Changes into	The night before

(Direct) She said, "I am glad to be here this evening."

(Indirect) She said that she was glad to be there that evening.

The changes do not occur if the speech is reported during the same period or at the same place.

Exclamations and Wishes: In reporting exclamations and wishes the indirect speech is introduced by some verb expressing exclamation or wish.

(Direct) He said, "Alas! I am deeply hurt."

(Indirect) He exclaimed sadly that he was deeply hurt.

(Direct) Meena said, "How brave you are!"

(Indirect) Meena exclaimed that I was very brave.

(Direct) Rakesh said, "Bravo! You have done well."

(Indirect) Rakesh applauded him, saying that he had done well.

(Direct) "So help me heaven!" he cried, I will never steal again.

(Indirect) He called upon Heaven to witness his resolve never to steal again.

Interrogatives: In reporting interrogatives, the indirect speech is introduced by some such verbs as asked, enquired etc.

When the question is not introduced by an interrogative word, the reporting verb is followed by whether or if.

(Direct) He said to me, "What are you doing?"

(Indirect) He asked me what I was doing.

(Direct) "Where do you live?" asked the stranger.

(Indirect) The stranger enquired where I lived.

(Direct) My uncle said to us, "Where are you going?"

(Indirect) My uncle enquired Where we were going.

(Direct) "Do you suppose you know better than your own father?" jeered his angry mother.

(Indirect) His angry mother jeered and asked whether he supposed that he knew better than his own father.

Commands and Requests: In reporting commands and requests, the indirect speech is introduced by verb expressing command or request and the imperative mood is changed into the infinitive.

(Direct) Krishna said to Arjun, "Go away".

(Indirect) Krishna ordered Arjun to go away.

(Direct) He said to him, "Please wait here till I return".

(Indirect) He requested him to wait there till he returned.

(Direct) "Call the first witness", said the judge.

(Indirect) The judge commanded them to call the first witness.

(Direct) He shouted, "Let me go."

(Indirect) He shouted to them to let him go.

Directions: In the following questions, sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect Speech. Out of the four natives suggested select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct Speech.

Exercise

1. Kiran asked me, "Did you see the cricket match on television last night?"
 - (a) Kiran asked me whether I saw the cricket match on television the earlier night.
 - (b) Kiran asked me whether I had seen the cricket match on television the earlier night.
 - (c) Kiran asked me did I see the cricket match on television last night.
 - (d) Kiran asked me whether I had seen the cricket match on television last night.
2. David said to Anna, "Mona will leave for her native place tomorrow."
 - (a) David told Anna that Mona will leave for her native place tomorrow.
 - (b) David told Anna that Mona left for her native place the next day.
 - (c) David old to Anna that Mona be leaving for her native place tomorrow.
 - (d) David told Anna that Mona would leave for her native place the next day.
3. I said to him, "Why are you working so hard?"
 - (a) I asked him why he was working so hard.
 - (b) I asked him why was he working so hard.
 - (c) I asked him why he had been working so hard.
 - (d) I asked him why had he been working so hard.
4. He said to her, "What a cold day!"
 - (a) He told her that it was a cold day.
 - (b) He exclaimed that it was a cold day.
 - (c) He exclaimed sorrowfully that it was a cold day.
 - (d) He exclaimed that it was a very cold day.
5. The tailor said to him, "Will you have the suit ready by tomorrow evening?"
 - (a) The tailor asked him that he will have the suit ready by the next evening.
 - (b) The tailor asked him that he would had the suit ready by the next evening.
 - (c) The tailor asked him if he would have the suit ready by the next evening.
 - (d) The tailor asked him if he will like to have the suit ready by the next evening.
6. He said to the interviewer, "Could you please repeat the question?"
 - (a) He requested the interviewer if he could please repeat the question.
 - (b) He requested the interviewer to please repeat the question.
 - (c) He requested the interviewer to repeat the question.
 - (d) He requested the interviewer if he could repeat the question.
7. He said, "Be quiet and listen to my words."
 - (a) He urged them to be quiet and listen to his words.
 - (b) He urged them and said be quiet and listen to words.

- (c) He said they should be quiet and listen to his words.
 (d) He said you should be quiet and listen to my words.
8. He said to me, "I have often told you not to play with fire."
 (a) He said that he has often been telling me not to play with fire.
 (b) He told me that he had often told me not to play with fire.
 (c) He reminded me that he often said to me not to play with fire.
 (d) He said to me that he often told me not to play with fire.
9. The Captain said to his men, "Stand at ease."
 (a) The Captain urged his men to stand at ease.
 (b) The Captain wanted his men to stand at ease.
 (c) The Captain told his men that they should stand at ease.
 (d) The Captain commanded his men to stand at ease.
10. Pawan said to me, "If I hear any news, I'll phone you."
 (a) Pawan told me that if he heard any news, he will phone me.
 (b) Pawan told me that if he will hear any news, he will phone me.
 (c) Pawan told me if he had heard any news, he would phone me.
 (d) Pawan told me that if he heard any news, he would phone me.
11. The teacher said to Mahesh, "Congratulations! Wish you success in life."
 (a) The teacher congratulated Mahesh and said wish you success in life.
 (b) The teacher wished congratulations and success in life to Mahesh.
 (c) The teacher said congratulations to Mahesh and wished him success in life.
 (d) The teacher Mahesh and wished him success in life congratulated.
12. The poor examinee said, "O God, take pity on me."
 (a) The poor examinee prayed God to take pity on him.
 (b) The poor examinee, invoking God implored him to take pity on him.
 (c) The poor examinee exclaimed that God take pity on him.
 (d) The poor examinee asked God to take pity on him.
13. "Where will you be tomorrow," I said, "in case I have to ring you?"
 (a) I asked where you will be the next day in case I will ring hint.
 (b) I asked where he would be the next day in case I had to ring hint.
 (c) I said to him where he will be in case I have to ring him.
 (d) I enquired about his whereabouts the next day in case I would have to ring up.
14. Seeta said to me, "Can you give me your pen?"
 (a) Seeta asked me can I give her my pen.
 (b) Seeta asked me if I can give me your pen.
 (c) Seeta asked me if I could give her my pen.
 (d) Seeta asked me if I gave her my pen.
15. The father warned his son that he should be beware of him.
 (a) The father warned his son, "Beware of him!"
 (b) The father warned his son, "Watch that chap!"
 (c) The father warned his son. "Be careful about him."
 (d) The father warned his son, "Don't fall into the trap."
16. Manna asked Rohan, "Have you sat in a trolley bus before?"
 (a) Manna asked Rohan whether he had sat in a trolley bus earlier.
 (b) Manna asked Rohan had he sat in a trolley bus before.
 (c) Manna asked Rohan if he sat on a trolley bus before.
 (d) Manna asked Rohan if he has ever sat in a trolley bus.

17. Farhan asked Geeta, "Could you lend me a hundred rupees until tomorrow?"
 (a) Farhan asked Geeta whether she could lend him a hundred rupees until tomorrow.
 (b) Farhan asked Geeta whether she could lend him a hundred rupees until the next day.
 (c) Farhan asked Geeta whether she could lend me a hundred rupees until the next day.
 (d) Farhan asked whether Geeta could lend me a hundred rupees until the next day.
18. "What about going for a swim," he said, "It's quite fine now."
 (a) He asked me what about going for a swim as it was quite fine then.
 (b) He proposed going for a swim as it was quite fine.
 (c) He suggested going for a swim as it was quite fine.
 (d) He advised me to go for a swim as it was quite fine.
19. "You can't bathe in this sea," he said to me "it's very rough."
 (a) He said that I can't bathe in this sea because it's very rough.
 (b) He said that you couldn't bathe in that sea if it was very rough.
 (c) He said that I couldn't bathe in that sea as it was very rough.
 (d) He said that you can't bathe in this sea since it was very rough.
20. Jagdish said, "We passed by a beautiful lake when we went on a trip to Goa."
 (a) Jagdish said that they passed by a beautiful lake when they had gone on a trip to Goa.
 (b) Jagdish said that they had passed by a beautiful lake when they went on a trip to Goa.
 (c) Jagdish said that they had passed by a beautiful lake when they had gone on a trip to Goa.
 (d) Jagdish said they passed by a beautiful lake when they went on a trip to Goa.
21. Ram said, "I always speak the truth."
 (a) Ram said I always speak the truth.
 (b) Ram said that he always speaks the truth.
 (c) Ram said that he always spoke the truth.
 (d) Ram said that he always had spoken the truth.
22. He said, "I don't need this pen."
 (a) He said that he doesn't need that pen.
 (b) He said that he didn't need this pen.
 (c) He said that he didn't need that pen.
 (d) He said that I didn't need that pen.
23. Ram said, "I am rich."
 (a) Ram said that I was rich.
 (b) Ram said that he is rich.
 (c) Ram said that he is rich.
 (d) Ram said that he was rich.
24. The teacher said, "The sun rises in the east."
 (a) The teacher said that the sun rose in the east.
 (b) The teacher said that the sun had risen in the east.
 (c) The teacher said that the sun rises in the east.
 (d) The teacher said that the sun risen in the east.
25. Sohan said to me, "We have won the match."
 (a) Sohan told me we have won the match.
 (b) Sohan told me if they have won the match.
 (c) Sohan told me that they had won the match.
 (d) Sohan said to me that they had won the match.
26. She said to me, "You lost my book."
 (a) She said to me that I lost my book.
 (b) She told me that I lost her book.
 (c) She told me that I had lost her book.
 (d) She told me that she had lost my book.

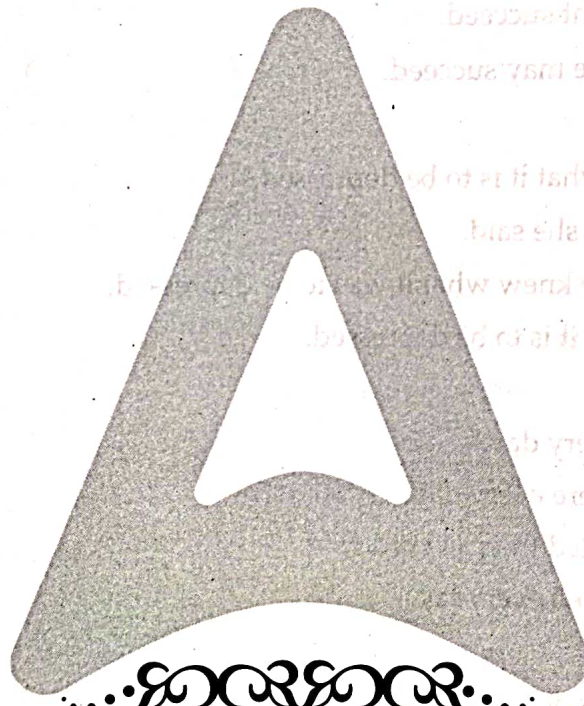
27. He said to me, "You can take my slate."
 (a) He said to me that you could take his slate.
 (b) He told me that I could take his slate.
 (c) He told me that he could take my slate.
 (d) He told me that I could take my slate.
28. Mohan said, "I don't smoke a cigarette."
 (a) Mohan said that he didn't smoke a cigarette.
 (b) Mohan said that I didn't smoke a cigarette.
 (c) Mohan said that he does not smoke a cigarette.
 (d) Mohan asked that he does not smoke a cigarette.
29. The old man said, "God is everywhere."
 (a) The old man said that God was everywhere.
 (b) The old man said that God has been everywhere.
 (c) The old man asked that God is everywhere.
 (d) The old man said that God is everywhere.
30. The captain said, "Alas! our foes are too strong."
 (a) The captain told that Alas! our foes are too strong.
 (b) The captain told him that our foes are too strong.
 (c) The captain exclaimed with sorrow that their foes were very strong.
 (d) The captain exclaimed with sorrow that his foes were very strong.
31. Rama says, "Mohan is ill".
 (a) Rama asks that Mohan is ill.
 (b) Rama tells that Mohan is ill.
 (c) Rama says that Mohan is ill.
 (d) None of the above
32. he said, "I am unwell."
 (a) he told that he is unwell.
 (b) He said that he was unwell.
 (c) he tells that I am unwell.
 (d) None of the above
33. I shall say again, "You stole Hari's book."
 (a) I said again that he stole hari's book.
 (b) I will say again that you stole hari's book.
 (c) I shall say again that you stole hari's book.
 (d) None of the above
34. The captain said, "Alas! our foes are too strong."
 (a) The captain told that Alas! our foes are too strong.
 (b) The captain told him that our foes are too strong.
 (c) The captain exclaimed with sorrow that their foes were very strong.
 (d) The captain exclaimed with sorrow that his foes were very strong.

35. He said, "I shall go as soon as possible".
 (a) He said that he would go as soon as possible.
 (b) He said that he would go as soon as it was possible.
 (c) He said he would go as soon as it was possible.
 (d) None of the above
36. He said, "By God, I am speaking the truth".
 (a) He swore by God and said that he is speaking the truth.
 (b) He said that by God I am speaking the truth.
 (c) He swore by God and said that he was speaking the truth.
 (d) None of the above
37. The teacher said, "Mrs. Indira Gandhi died in 1984."
 (a) The teacher told that Mrs. Indira Gandhi died in 1984
 (b) The teacher said that Mrs. Indira Gandhi died in 1984.
 (c) The teacher tells that Mrs. Indira Gandhi was died in 1984.
 (d) None of the above
38. He said, "She has been reading for two hours."
 (a) He told that she has been reading for two hours.
 (b) he told that she had been reading for two hours.
 (c) he said that she had been reading for two hours.
 (d) None of the above
39. He said, "God is one."
 (a) he said that god is one.
 (b) he tells that god in one.
 (c) he told that god in one.
 (d) None of the above
40. He said, "My sister was doing her work."
 (a) he told that his sister had doing her work.
 (b) he told that his sister had been doing her work.
 (c) he said that his sister had been doing her work.
 (d) None of the above
41. He said, "Sheela will have been working till morning"?
 (a) He told that Sheela would have been working till morning.
 (b) He said that Sheela would have been working till morning.
 (c) He said Sheela would have been workig till morning.
 (d) None of the above
42. Viresh said, "I must reach the office before time as the Director is to visit the factory."
 (a) Viresh said that he had to reach his office before time as the Director was to visit the factory.
 (b) Viresh told that he had to reach his office before time as the Director was to visit the factory.
 (c) Viresh said that I had to reach his office before time as the Director was to visit the factory.
 (d) None of the above
43. Convert the sentence in indirect speech to direct speech - "He exclaimed sadly that he was undone."
 (a) He said, "I am undone."
 (b) He said I am undone.
 (c) He said , "Alas. I am undone."
 (d) He said, "Alas ! I am undone."
44. Convert the direct speech to indirect - She said, "Thank you !"
 (a) She said to me thank you.
 (b) She said thank you to me.
 (c) She thanked me.
 (d) She said that thank you!

45. What is the other name of Indirect speech?
- (a) Quoted speech
 - (b) Reported speech
 - (c) Simple speech
 - (d) Principal speech
46. My cousin said, "My room-mate snored throughout the night."
- (a) My cousin told me that her room-mate snored throughout the night.
 - (b) My cousin said that her room-mate had snored throughout the night.
 - (c) My cousin felt that her room-mate may be snoring throughout the night.
 - (d) None of the above
47. Shiv said to her, "May you succeed!"
- (a) Shiv wished her success.
 - (b) Shiv told her that she might succeed.
 - (c) She prayed to God that she may succeed.
 - (d) None of the above
48. Mrs. Sharma said, "I know what it is to be depressed."
- (a) Mrs. Sharma is depressed she said.
 - (b) Mrs. Sharma said that she knew what it was to be depressed.
 - (c) Mrs. Sharma knows what it is to be depressed.
 - (d) None of the above
49. Radha said, "I work here every day."
- (a) Radha said that I work here every day.
 - (b) Radha said that she worked there everyday.
 - (c) Radha said that she worked everyday.
 - (d) None of the above
50. Ramesh said, "I went to school yesterday."
- (a) Ramesh said that he had gone to school yesterday.
 - (b) Ramesh said that he had gone to school the previous day.
 - (c) Ramesh said that he had gone to school the next day.
 - (d) None of the above

Solutions

1.	d	2.	d	3.	a	4.	d	5.	c
6.	d	7.	a	8.	b	9.	d	10.	d
11.	d	12.	a	13.	b	14.	c	15.	a
16.	a	17.	b	18.	A	19.	c	20.	c
21.	c	22.	c	23.	d	24.	c	25.	c
26.	c	27.	b	28.	a	29.	d	30.	c
31.	b	32.	c	33.	c	34.	c	35.	b
36.	c	37.	b	38.	c	39.	a	40.	b
41.	b	42.	a	43.	d	44.	c	45.	b
46.	b	47.	a	48.	b	49.	b	50.	b



Miscellaneous

Exercise

1. (1) She does not hardly / (2) know what / (3) happened yesterday. / (4) No error
2. (1) She's all sweetness and lightness / (2) provided you're doing / (3) What she wants. / (4) No error
3. (1) In Singapore / (2) my brother-in-law with his wife / (3) were present at the function. / (4) No error
4. (1) Adults suffering chicken pox / (2) can develop / (3) all kinds of complications. / (4) No error
5. (1) Beside food / (2) the pilgrims carried / (3) some medicines. / (4) No error
6. (1) Two hours have passed / (2) since / (3) he had fallen asleep. / (4) No error
7. (1) Either of the roads / (2) lead / (3) to the park. / (4) No error
8. (1) Unless you do not give / (2) the keys of the safe / (3) you will be shot. / (4) No error
9. (1) I and my brother / (2) live with our parents / (3) and work in the farm. / (4) No error
10. (1) I wish / (2) he saw you / (3) when you were in Nepal. / (4) No error
11. (1) I was surprised and pleased / (2) when I was informed of me / (3) winning the contest. / (4) No error
12. (1) When the rules for police procedure / (2) were laid up / (3) a lot of grey areas remained. / (4) No error
13. (1) It is high time / (2) he stood on his own / (3) two legs. / (4) No error
14. (1) There is / (2) only one of his novels / (3) that are interesting. / (4) No error
15. (1) It is about time / (2) you have taken your children / (3) to school. / (4) No error
16. (1) Children enjoy listening to / (2) ghosts stories / (3) especially on Halloween night. / (4) No error
17. (1) I hope to go to shopping / (2) this weekend / (3) if the weather permits. / (4) No error
18. (1) By the time you arrive tomorrow / (2) I have finished / (3) my work. / (4) No error
19. (1) The candidate's performance / (2) was not upto mark / (3) in the interview. / (4) No error
20. (1) Being his sole companion / (2) I was the one to who / (3) he naturally looked for help. / (4) No error
21. (1) The scientist was seemed / (2) to be excited / (3) over the result of his experiment. / (4) No error
22. (1) I am not familiar with / (2) all the important places in this town, / (3) although I have been living here since two years. / (4) No error
23. (1) None of the applicants have turned up / (2) for the interview / (3) on time. / (4) No error
24. (1) Kamala is not / (2) inferior than Geeta / (3) in her studies. / (4) No error
25. (1) India's problems are not similar with / (2) those of other countries / (3) in several ways. / (4) No error
26. (1) She is very weak in the subject / (2) and does not understand things / (3) though the teacher explains her repeatedly. / (4) No error
27. (1) Now we have banks / (2) and people deposit there money there / (3) and draw it out by cheques. / (4) No error
28. (1) Apart government agencies, / (2) a number of private organisations too / (3) have been making use of satellites. / (4) No error
29. (1) Instead of being / (2) helpful he was / (3) being hindrance. / (4) No error
30. (1) By the time she had finished her work / (2) I had nearly given up / (3) all hope of arriving at the party in time. / (4) No error
31. (1) World is producing enough / (2) for every citizen but still there is hunger and malnutrition / (3) and it is continuing year after year. / (4) No error

32. (1) I and Gopal / (2) went to the meeting / (3) together. / (4) No error
33. (1) Lack of winter rains / (2) have delayed the sowing of / (3) wheat crop in this area. / (4) No error
34. (1) He boasts of having visited Europe many times / (2) but he can neither speak English / (3) nor he can speak French. / (4) No error
35. (1) The deliberations by / (2) the committee / (3) are completely confidential. / (4) No error
36. (1) To the man who worked so hard in the project, / (2) the news was / (3) profound disappointing. / (4) No error
37. (1) Even though she lost the beauty contest, / (2) she was still more prettier / (3) than the other girls. / (4) No error
38. (1) He has been suffering / (2) with fever / (3) for the last six weeks. / (4) No error
39. (1) In spite of all efforts to eradicate malaria / (2) it still prevalent / (3) in many parts of India. / (4) No error
40. (1) I have / (2) no news from him / (3) for a long time. / (4) No error

Solutions

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. (1) Remove 'hardly'. | 21. (1) Remove 'was'. |
| 2. (1) Replace 'lightness' with 'light'. | 22. (3) Replace 'for' with 'since'. |
| 3. (3) Replace 'were' with 'was'. | 23. (1) Replace 'have' with 'has'. |
| 4. (1) Use 'suffering from'. | 24. (2) Use 'to' in place of 'than'. |
| 5. (1) Replace 'beside' with 'besides'. | 25. (1) Replace 'with' by 'to'. |
| 6. (3) Use 'fell' in place of 'had fallen'. | 26. (4) No error. |
| 7. (2) Replace 'lead' with 'leads'. | 27. (2) Replace 'there money' with 'their money'. |
| 8. (1) Remove 'do not'. | 28. (1) Use 'from' after 'apart'. |
| 9. (1) Use 'My brother and I'. | 29. (3) Use 'a' in place of 'being'. |
| 10. (2) Use 'had seen' in place of 'saw'. | 30. (1) Remove 'had'. |
| 11. (2) Use 'of my' in place of 'of me'. | 31. (4) No error. |
| 12. (2) Replace 'laid up' with 'laid down'. | 32. (1) Replace 'I and Gopal' with 'Gopal and I'. |
| 13. (3) Remove 'two' from the sentence. | 33. (2) Replace 'have' with 'has'. |
| 14. (3) Replace 'that are' with 'that is'. | 34. (3) Remove 'he can'. |
| 15. (2) Replace 'have taken' with 'took'. | 35. (1) Replace 'by' with 'of'. |
| 16. (2) Use 'ghost' in place of 'ghosts'. | 36. (3) Use 'profoundly' in place of 'profound'. |
| 17. (1) Remove 'to' after 'go'. | 37. (2) Remove 'more'. |
| 18. (2) Use 'would have' in place of 'have'. | 38. (2) Use 'from' in place of 'with'. |
| 19. (2) Add 'the' before 'mark'. | 39. (2) Use 'it is still prevalent' in place of 'it still prevalent'. |
| 20. (2) Use 'whom' in place of 'who'. | 40. (2) Replace 'from' with 'of'. |



Section B

VOCABULARY

Commonly Mis-spelt Words

About three-four questions (based on spellings) are asked in all kinds of exams. Some spellings always confuse the aspirants so it becomes necessary for the students to cover as many spellings as possible. So we have decided to cover all the important spellings. Students need to go through all the basic rules for spellings and practice the questions based on spellings.

Spelling related questions are always in the following question forms-

- four words are given out of which only one is correctly spelt. (So three spellings will be wrong.)
- four words are given out of which only one is misspelt. (So three spellings will be right.)

In both cases we are asked to find out the correct spelling. So it is required for the aspirants to practice questions based on spellings and study all the rules of spellings.

Some rules for spelling

Rule 1

When the suffix 'full' is added to a word, one 'l' is removed. Example-

- faith + full - faithful
- use + full - useful

If the word to which the suffix 'full' is added ends in '-ll' one 'l' is removed from the word. Example-

- skill + full - skilful
- will + full - wilful

Rule 2

One syllable words ending in single vowel + single consonant double the consonant before a suffix beginning with a vowel. Example-

- beg + ed - begged
- big + er - bigger
- trim + ing - trimming
- sad + est - saddest

Rule 3

A final 'y' following a vowel does not change before a suffix. Example-

- obey + ed - obeyed
- play + er - player
- pray + ed - prayed

Rule 4

Words ending in silent 'e' drop the 'e' before a suffix beginning with a vowel. Example-

- hope + ing - hoping
- live + ed - lived
- drive + er - driver

If the suffix begins with a consonant, 'e' is not dropped. Example-

- hope + full - hopeful
- sincere + ly - sincerely

Some Exceptions to this rule are-

- (i) True + ly - truly
- (ii) argue + ment - argument
- (iii) nine + th - ninth

Rule 5

Consonant 't' is doubled in the words ending in single vowel + 't' before a suffix beginning with a vowel.

Example-

- (i) repel + ent - repellent
- (ii) travel + er - traveller
- (iii) quarrel + ed - quarrelled

Rule 6

When the suffix 'ing' is added to a word ending in 'ie', this 'ie' is changed to 'y'. Example-

- (i) lie + ing - lying
- (ii) tie + ing - tying
- (iii) die + ing - dying

Rule 7

Words of two or three syllables ending in single vowel + single consonant double the final consonant if the last syllable is stressed. Example-

- (i) permit + ed - permitted
- (ii) occur + ing - occurring
- (iii) control + er - controller
- (iv) begin + ing - beginning

Rule 8

When the suffix 'ous' is added to a word ending in 'ce', 'e' is changed to 'i'. Example-

- (i) space + ous - spacious
- (ii) vice + ous - vicious
- (iii) malice + ous - malicious
- (iv) grace + ous - gracious

Rule 9

A final 'y' following a consonant changes to 'i' before a suffix except 'ing'. Example-

- (i) carry + ed - carried
- (ii) happy + ly - happily
- (iii) marry + age - marriage
- (iv) carry + ing - carrying

Rule 10

Words ending in 'ee' do not drop an 'e' before a suffix. Example-

- (i) see + ing - seeing
- (ii) agree + ment - agreement

Rule 11

The spelling of a word does not change when you add a prefix to it even when the first letter of the word and the last letter of the prefix are the same. Example-

- (i) mis + step - misstep
- (ii) mis + spell - misspell

Rule 12

In a word 'ei' is generally used after 'c' and 'ie' is used after any other letter. Example.

conceit
conceive
deceive
receive

achieve
believe
relieve
field

Some Exceptions of this rule are
weird, surfeit, protein, seize, counterfeit

'A'		
	Ambassador	Anonymous
Accommodation	Anxiety	Agility
Acknowledgement	Annihilation	Architecture
Accustom	Amateur	Assailant
Acclamation	Apparatus	Affectionate
Aggregate	Acupuncture	Aerodrum
Appropriate	Affidavit	Adolescence
Acquiesce	Assiduous	Allegiance
Amphitheatre	Autumn	
Abhorrence		
'B'		
	Bureaucracy	Buffalo
Battalion	Buffoon	Biscuit
Biennial	Bibliophile	Bankruptcy
Beneficial	Bequeath	
Budget		
'C'		
	Connoisseur	Circumstantial
Committee	Convalesce	Catalogue
Counterfeit	Curriculum	Champagne
Commitment	Commemorate	Cigarette
Convenience	Conceive	Colloquial
Conscience	Colleague	Chauffeur
Commander	Cholera	Ceiling
Coolie	Colonel	Cassette
Commissioner	Caterpillar	Chlorophyll
Catalogue	Counsellor	Corroboration
Cellulose	Colossal	Councillor
Commandant	Circumference	Chloroform
Collision		
'D'		
	Deteriorate	Dysentery
Diarrhoea	Dyspepsia	Dispensary
Distillation	Dialogue	Descendant
Discernible	Deceive	
Dilemma		

'E'		
Exemplary	Excursion	Eloquent
Etiquette	Erroneous	Exaggeration
Ecstasy	Exchequer	Efficiency
Efficacious	Embarrassment	Eczema
Encyclopedia	Eucalyptus	Entrepreneur
Emancipation	Enthusiastic	Espionage
Exonerated	Enunciation	Embroidery
'F'		
Fahrenheit	Fortieth	Fulfilled
Feminine	Fierce	Fallacious
Fascination	Facsimile	Freight
'G'		
Grievance	Grotesque	Grammar
Gazette	Guarantee	Genuine
Grandeur	Goddess	Garrulous
Gonorrhoea	Grasshopper	Garrison
Giraffe	Gynaecology	Glutton
'H'		
Hemoglobin	Hemorrhage	Heifer
Hereditary	Heterogeneous	Honorary
Hippopotamus	Hygiene	Hysteria
Herbivorous	Humorous	Hundredth
Harassment	Heinous	
'I'		
Inflammable	Incarnation	Irresistible
Irrelevant	Irreparable	Indigenous
Increment	Influenza	Identically
Ignominious	Irruption	Incessantly
Intermission	Isochromatic	Iniquitous
'J'		
Jaundice	Jubilee	Jewellery
Jussive	Juvenile	Juggles
Jealousy	Juxtapose	
'K'		
Knave	Kerosene	Kaleidoscope
	Kettleful	Kennel

'L'

Leisure	Luxurious	Lieutenant
Lecturer	Lantern	Leniency
Ladder	Locomotive	Lactometer
Laurel	Liquefier	Luscious

'M'

Magistrate	Maintenance	Malleable
Manganese	Marvelous	Meager
Miscellaneous	Militant	Millennium
Millionaire	Missile	Mistress
Magnificent	Manageable	Massacre
Mattress	Mausoleum	Mischievous
Moustache	Military	Martyr
Missionary	Manoeuvre	Mosquito

'N'

Noticeable	Nuisance	Necessitate
Nightingale	Nauseous	Notoriety
Neigh		

'O'

Occasional	Omniscient	Orchestra
Occurrence	Omission	Oscillation
Outrageous	Oviferous	Orphanage
Omnivorous	Obsolete	Offence
Ominous	Onomatopoeia	

'P'

Parallelogram	Pneumonia	Proprietor
Perceive	Proletariat	Pursue
Pharmaceutical	Phenomenon	Professor
Pension	Plague	Possession
Privilege	Picturesque	Perceive
Procession	Paraffin	Pasteurization

'Q'

Quarrel	Quarrelling	Quarreled
Queue	Quinine	Questionnaire
Quietly	Quotation	Quorum
Quiescence	Quadrennial	Quadruped

'R'

Rebellion	Referee	Reference
Repetition	Restarant	Reindeer
Remittance	Remainder	Reservoir

@CUET 2024 BOOKS

Rhinoceros	Regrettable	Rogue
Rehearsal	Rhombus	Requisition
Renaissance	Remissible	Recession
'S'		
Scissors	Skillful	Siege
Syllabi	Superintendent	Secretariat
Spectacles	Simultaneously	Sovereign
Strategy	Soliloquy	
Scoundrel	Seismologist	Seizor
Consciousness	Stethoscope	Successor
Superstitious	Surrender	Satellite
Squirrel	Surveillance	Supposition
Swelling		
'T'		
Tenacious	Transgressor	Thermometer
Tuition	Twelfth	Tiffin
Translucent	Trespasser	Typhoid
Thesaurus	Triennial	Thunderous
Tyrant	Territory	
'U'		
Until	Utterior	Utterance
Ubiquitous	Utility	
'V'		
Vaccination	Vicissitude	Vocabulary
Vicious	Villainous	Voluntarily
Verandah	Visionary	Ventilator
Vacuum	Vaporization	Vermilion
Vertebrate	Veterinary	Vigorous
Viscosity		
'W'		
Waitress	Warrior	Whittle
Wooden	Woolen	Wholesome
Writing	Wednesday	Withdrawal
'X'		
Xenomania	Xylography	
'Y'		
Yield	Yoke	Yeoman
		Yawning
'Z'		
Zein	Zigzagged	Zealous
Zootomy	Zytheapsary	Zoology

Idioms are "a group of words established by usage as having a meaning not deducible from the individual words (e.g. over the moon, see the light)." We have attempted to cover all the important phrases, which are important for exams. So students need to go through all the idioms & phrases better understanding of these type of questions.

		'A'
1.	Above board	Honest & Open
2.	Acid Test	Difficult Test
3.	Add fuel to the flame or fire	To make the situation worst
4.	At Sea, At a loss At your wit's end	Completely confused
5.	At cross purposes	At contrast/contrary
6.	Axe to grind	To behave selfishly
7.	A gentleman at large Snake in the grass	An unreliable person
8.	At daggers drawn	Full of enmity
9.	A close fist person	A miser
10.	At the first blush	At first sight
11.	Armed to the teeth	With weapons
12.	Add insult to injury	act in a way that makes a bad situation worse
13.	A bone to pick	A conflict to be resolved
14.	A Herculean Task	Very difficult work
15.	At the drop of a hat	Immediately
16.	A square deal	A deed full of honesty
17.	At odds	Contrast in thoughts
18.	Around the clock	All time
19.	All ears	Eager to listen
20.	Alive and kicking	Healthy and Active
		'B'
1.	Bad Blood	Old enmity
2.	Bad Mouth	To make comments on other
3.	Beyond the pale	Unacceptable by society
4.	Bite the dust	Defeat badly
5.	Bird Brain	Foolish
6.	Blink of an eye	Immediately
7.	Bits and Bobs	Many small things
8.	By fits and starts	Irregularly
9.	By the book	According to the rules

10.	By and large	Commonly
11.	Bury the hatchet	To foretell enmity
12.	Broken reed	An unreliable man
13.	Bread and butter	An issue directly affect the people
14.	Bottom line	Net profit/result
15.	Bone of contention	Cause of conflict
16.	Blue blood	Belong to high family
17.	Blow hot and cold	Fickle minded
18.	Beck and call	Ready to serve
19.	Bear the Palm	To win reward
20.	Back the wrong horse	to support a person or thing that fails

'C'

1.	Call a spade a spade	In simple words/to tell the truth
2.	Carrot and stick	Policy of reward and punishment
3.	Carry the day	To become success
4.	Cast aspersions	To blame someone
5.	Curry favour	To flattery
6.	Cut above	Comparatively good
7.	Cross /Swords	To get enmity
8.	Come clean	To admit a mistake/crime
9.	Cliff hanger	An interesting situation
10.	Clean sweep	Clean victory
11.	Cat and dog life	Life full of Quarrel
12.	Cheek by jowl	Very closely
13.	Cloud nine	Extremely happy
14.	Crack of dawn	Early in the morning
15.	Cry over spilt milk	To regret uselessly
16.	Cook the book	To prepare false Accounts
17.	Chip off the old block	Same as parents
18.	Cock and bull story	A false story

'D'

1.	Down to earth	Practical and realistic
2.	Dead right	Completely right
3.	Die in harness	To die on duty
4.	Draw the line	TO set limits
5.	Dog eat dog	A tough competition
6.	Drive home	To highlight a point
7.	Dime a dozen	Very common
8.	Devil's advocate	To favour wrong
9.	Dark horse	An unexpected winner
10.	Dry Run	To Rehearsal

11.	Drive someone up the wall	To make angry
		'E'
1.	Eat humble pie	To ask forgiveness
2.	Eagle Eyes	A keen observer
3.	At the eleventh hour	At the last moment
4.	Enough rope	To give freedom
5.	End in Smoke End in a fiasco	To get failure
6.	Even keel	In balance
7.	Eye wash	A deception
8.	Eye for an eye	Tit for tat
9.	Eat your words	To admit mistake openly
		'F'
1.	Face the music	To face consequences
2.	Fullness of time	At the correct time
3.	Fly a kite	To know public opinion
4.	Foul play	Mistake/Wrong act
5.	Fool's Paradise	Completely wrong thoughts
6.	Feather in one's cap	Any achievement
7.	Fair-weather friend	The friends of only good time
8.	Fat chance	Having no chance
9.	Flesh and blood	Close Relatives
10.	Flogging a dead horse	Try uselessly
11.	For the time being	For a short time
12.	Fall short on	To prove failure
13.	Foregone conclusion	a clean decision
14.	From scratch	since beginning
15.	Fight to the bitter end	To fight till last
		'G'
1.	Get the sack	To dismiss from the job
2.	Go a long way	To get success
3.	Greek to me	Out of understanding
4.	Gone fishing	Unaware about surrounding
5.	Grey area	Weak point
6.	Grease Someone's palm	To give bribe
7.	Go Dutch	To pay bill equally
8.	Gift of the gab	Expert in speaking
9.	Give the game away	To disclose secret
10.	Green-eyed monster	A jealous person
11.	Get a raw deal	To face humility
12.	Give it a shot	To try to do something

13.	Give one a piece of mind	To scold
14.	Go scot free	To escape from punishment
15.	Go off on a tangent	To charge the topic
'H'		
1.	Have the last laugh	To get succeed at last
2.	Hue and cry	To make a noise uselessly
3.	Hold water	Correct and logical
4.	Have a way with words	Expert in using words
5.	Hard up	Lack of money
6.	High and low	Everywhere
7.	Hobson's choice	Having no choice in fact
8.	Hornets' nest	A big problem
9.	Hand to mouth	Very poor
10.	Hale and Hearty	Completely healthy
11.	High and dry	Alone and helpless
12.	Hop, skip and a jump	Very close
'I'		
1.	In a fix	In difficult situation
2.	In the red	A situation of more expense than income
3.	In the good books of	Favourite of someone
4.	Ins and outs	Complete details
5.	In hot water	In a difficult situation
6.	In high spirits	In happiness
7.	In a nutshell	In brief
8.	In the long run	At last
9.	In apple pie order	Clean and in order
10.	In cold blood	deliberate and callously
11.	In saddle	Under control
'J'		
1.	Jump to a conclusion	To conclude without thinking
2.	Jump on the bandwagon	To follow a fashion blindly
'K'		
1.	Keep under wraps	to keep secret
2.	Knit brows	Tense and sad
3.	Kith and kin	Close relatives
4.	Kick the bucket give up the ghost	To die
5.	Kick in the teeth	To be treated badly and unfairly
6.	Knee jerk reaction	A quick & natural response
7.	Keep pants on	To have patience
8.	Keep at bay	To keep at a distance

9.	Keep ear to the ground	To keep a close eye on the situation
10.	Keep the wolf from the door	Avoid from poverty
11.	Keep body & soul together	To line with a great difficulty
		'L'
1.	Look blank	To see flatly
2.	Long shot	Less chance of success
3.	Lose face	To spoil name goodwill
4.	Larger than life	Attractive & effective
5.	Left handed compliment	To praise in the manner of criticism
6.	Lion's share	A great share
7.	Lock horns	To do quarrel/conflict
8.	Long face	Sad/unhappy
9.	Lead with the chin	Speak fearlessly
10.	Leave in the lurch	To leave in middle
11.	Let bygones be bygones	To forget the past
12.	Let the cat out of the bag	To disclose secret
13.	Level playing field	Equal opportunity
14.	Leave no stone unturned	To do all possible efforts
15.	Lip service	False respect
		'M'
1.	Mend his ways	To reform oneself
2.	Make good the loss Make amends for	To compensate
3.	Miss the boat/but	Not to avail opportunity
4.	Man of letters	A scholar
5.	Man of his word	One who keeps promise
6.	Man of means	Very rich
7.	Man of parts	Versatile
8.	Man of straw	A weak on easily affected person
9.	Mend fences	To compromise
10.	Make both ends meet	To survive hardly
11.	Make flesh creep	To make someone fear
12.	Make a mint	To earn a lot of money
		'N'
1.	Nick of time	At the last moment
2.	Nail in the coffin	Cause of downfall
3.	Nail-biter	something that causes anxiety
4.	No love lost	enmity
5.	Nuts and bolts	An important part
6.	Not bat an eyelid	To show no reaction
7.	Nitty Gritty	Most important issue

8.	Nip in the bud	To end in start
		'O'
1.	Out and out	Completely
2.	On the cuff	On credit
3.	Off and on	Irregularly
4.	Out of this world	Marvelous
5.	Out of the blue	Suddenly, not expected
6.	Out of hand	Uncontrol
7.	On the cards	Certainly
8.	Once in a blue moon	Rarely
9.	Off-hand	Without preparation
10.	On the level	Honest
11.	On a roll	Period of success
12.	Olive branch	An Appeal for peace
		'P'
1.	Part and Parcel	Important & necessary part
2.	Pass the buck	To avoid from responsibility
3.	Pay old scores	To take revenge
4.	Pie in the sky	Impractical/imaginary plan
5.	Play by ear	To work without rules
6.	Play havoc	To destroy
7.	Play ducks and darker with	To waste
8.	Pay off odd scores	To pay old credit
9.	Put to the sword	To kill/to hang
10.	Poker face	Face with no emotion
11.	Pros and cons	Both sides
12.	Pay through the nose	To pay very high
13.	Prim and Proper	With etiquette
14.	Play fast and loose	To work irresponsible
15.	Point blank	To say in a straight manner
		'Q'
1.	Quick fix	A temporary solution
2.	Queer fish	Eccentric
		'R'
1.	Run Riot, Run amok	To become uncontrollable
2.	Rue the day	To repent
3.	Red letter day	An important day
4.	Read between the lines	To understand the hidden meaning
5.	Raining cats and dogs	Raining heavily
6.	Red carpet	Welcome warmly
7.	Rainy day	Days of difficulties

8.	Red hearing	To divert the main issue
9.	Red tape	To hinder the gout process
10.	Rule the wrong way	To make angry
		'S'
1.	See eye to eye	To agree
2.	Sail in the same boat	To be in the same situation (bad)
3.	See red	To get angry
4.	Shifting sands	Changing situations
5.	Sit on the fence	To be neutral
6.	Small try	
7.	Slap on the wrist	A light punishment
8.	Spit blood	To be extremely angry
9.	State of the art	Developed and modern
10.	Spick and span	Neat & clean
11.	Status Quo	As it is
12.	Smoking gun	A definite proof
13.	Smell a rat	To be something suspicious
14.	Spin a yarn	To develop a false story
15.	Sharp practice	Dishonest deeds
16.	Send him to covetry	To stop talking
		'T'
1.	Take someone to task	To scold
2.	Take stock of	To evaluate the situation
3.	Take someone for a ride	To deceive someone
4.	Take the bull by its horns	To face the challenge bravely
5.	Take forty winks	To take a nap
6.	Tall order	A difficult task
7.	Turn one's head	To feel my proud
8.	Take into account	To consider
9.	Throw down the glove/ Gauntlet	To challenge
10.	Tongue in cheek	Irony, not serious
11.	The man in the street	Common people
12.	Touch and go	May be good or bad result
13.	Toe the line	To follow a rule etc.
		'U'
1.	Under fire	Under criticism
2.	Under the table	Bribe
3.	Up in the air	Uncertain
4.	Ups and downs	Rise & Fall
5.	Under a cloud	Under suspicion
6.	Upset the apple cast	To spoil a plan

7.	Upper hand	Comparatively good situation
		'V'
1.	Vicious circle	a sequence of reciprocal cause and effect
2.	Vent the spleen	To show anger
		'W'
1.	Wrong foot	Bad start
2.	Writing on the wall	Leading to a failure
3.	Worth your salt	Respectables
4.	With a heavy hand	In an excessive, authoritarian, or oppressive way or manner
5.	Win by a nose	To win closely
6.	Wet blanket	One who spoils enjoyment
7.	White elephant	A costly but useless thing
8.	Well-heeled	Very rich
9.	Walking on air	Extremely happy
10.	Wide of the Mark	Wrong, Illogical
		'Y'
1.	Young Turk	An uncontrollable rebellion
2.	Yeoman's Service	A great work
		'Z'
1.	Zero tolerance	Policy of not bearing wrong work
2.	Zero hour	Starting point of a time

Exercise

Direction: In questions 1 to 35, four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase given bold in the sentence. Choose the alternative which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase.

- For his alleged involvement in espionage, he is **under a cloud** these days.
 - experiencing cloudy weather
 - enjoying favourable luck
 - under suspicion
 - under observation
- We have appealed to him again and again; there is no use **flogging a dead horse** now.
 - repeating our request
 - making him see reason
 - beating about the bush
 - wasting time in useless effort
- we shouldn't **look down upon** the wretched of the earth.
 - sympathies with
 - hate intensely
 - be indifferent to
 - regard with contempt
- Because of his misbehavior, he is bound to **face the music**.
 - get finished
 - get reprimanded
 - feel sorry
 - listen to the music
- The working of the factory was disrupted on account of a **token strike** by the workers.
 - total strike
 - carefully planned strike
 - short strike held as a warning
 - sudden call of strike
- By opposing his proposal I **fell foul** of him.
 - quarreled with
 - felt annoyed with
 - agree with
 - did not agree with

7. Those who work by fits and starts seldom show good results.
 (a) rarely (b) disinterestedly
 (c) irregularly (d) regularly
8. The new manager thought that he would give employees enough rope for the first six months which he would check the work done himself.
 (a) many directives and orders (b) sufficient advice
 (c) all the material they needed (d) enough freedom for action
9. He was all at sea when he began his new Job.
 (a) happy (b) sad
 (c) puzzled (d) triumphant
10. The sweeping statement by the boss left the conscientious workers disgusted.
 (a) rash statement (b) unpremeditated statement
 (c) thoughtless statement (d) generalized statement
11. When he saw the snake he took to his heels.
 (a) ran away in fear (b) went slowly
 (c) walked in fear (d) jumped fast
12. He has to abide by the hard and fast rules of the company.
 (a) flexible (b) strict
 (c) difficult (d) honest
13. She goes to her mother's house off and on.
 (a) frequently (b) rarely
 (c) occasionally (d) sometimes
14. The robber murdered the woman in cold blood for the sake of the jewels.
 (a) a murder done without feeling
 (b) a murder done in revenge
 (c) a murder done in great anger
 (d) a murder done in enmity
15. Indians are going places in the field of software technology.
 (a) going abroad (b) going to spaces
 (c) talented and successful (d) friendly and amicable
16. He went on sowing wild oats; he reaped suffering in his later life.
 (a) inviting troubles as a boy
 (b) warning others as a young man
 (c) irresponsible pleasure seeking in young age
 (d) sowing grains called oats when young
17. I don't know why she has become stand-offish recently.
 (a) angry (b) hilarious
 (c) indifferent (d) unmanageable
18. Why don't you put an end to blowing your own trumpet?
 (a) playing your own trumpet to produce music
 (b) making too much noise
 (c) praising your own abilities and achievements
 (d) none of the above
19. I knew he had an axe to grind and turned down his offer of help.

- (a) a blunt axe
(c) a private interest to serve
The saint's life was an open book.
20. (a) an uncomplicated one
(c) an example to all
21. **Reading between the lines** I realized that my friend wanted to keep something from me.
(a) looking for meanings that are not actually expressed
(b) reading carelessly
(c) reading with anxiety
(d) glancing over the lines
22. Sometimes, it happens that we have to **give the devil his due**.
(a) to give credit to even a notorious person
(b) to give encouragement even to the enemy
(c) to invite the devil
(d) to stand in the way of the devil
23. The king had been made to **eat humble pie**.
(a) to eat slowly
(b) to have an excellent dish
(c) to eat a good pie
(d) to have to apologies
24. He was given **Hobson's choice** by the employer.
(a) excellent choice
(b) no real choice at all
(c) choice to live or die
(d) first choice
25. He has a very nice manner, but you would better take what he says **with a grain of salt**.
(a) to listen to something with considerable doubt
(b) to talk sensibly
(c) to criticize
(d) to complement
26. I think it is a **square deal**.
(a) a fair bargain
(b) a decent sale
(c) a unfair sale
(d) an unfair bargain
27. Rohit will have to **mend his ways** if he wants to keep his job.
(a) modify his plans
(b) improve his work
(c) improve his habits
(d) plan his future
28. His winning the Man of the Month award is a **feather in his cap**.
(a) a feather added to his collection
(b) an achievement of which he can be proud
(c) an exciting event
(d) a prize no one else has won
29. Ever since the Sinhas moved to their new flat, they've tended to **put on airs**.
(a) play a lot of music
(b) use the fan a great deal
(c) behave as if they're better than they really are
(d) become very argumentative and opinionated
30. Through he is a **close fisted person**, he donated liberally to the Earthquake Relief Fund.
(a) a frugal person
(b) physically handicapped
(c) a miserly person
(d) a poor person

One Word Substitution

One Word Substitution ("One word substitutes" are the words that replace group words or a full sentence effectively. Like the word "Atheist" can be used in place of sentence "a person who disbelieves or lacks belief in the existence of God or gods".)

Abbreviation	:	A shortened form of a word or phrase
Acrimonious	:	Angry and bitter (typically of speech or discussion)
Addict	:	One who has become dependent on something or drugs
Adolescence	:	The period between childhood and adulthood
Advocacy	:	Public support or recommendation for a policy
Agnostic	:	One who doubts the existence of god
Agnosticism	:	The belief that nothing can be known about God
Alienate	:	To turn friends enemies
Alimony	:	Allowance due to a wife from her husband on separation
Allegory	:	A story etc containing a hidden moral lesson
Amateur	:	A person who does something for pleasure rather than for payment
Amazon	:	A notably tall, physically strong, or strong-willed woman
Ambassador/	:	A diplomatic minister of the higher order sent by a country to another
Diplomat/Envoy	:	
Ambidextrous	:	A person who is able to use both hands with equal skill
Ambiguous	:	A statement open to more than one interpretation, A sentence whose meaning is unclear
Ambivalent	:	Having opposing feelings
Ambivert	:	Both introvert and extrovert
Amnesty	:	A general pardon granted by a government
Amphibian	:	Animals that can live on land and in water
Amphitheatre	:	An open, circular or oval building with a central space for the presentation of dramatic or sporting events surrounded by tiers of seats for spectators
Amputee	:	A person whose limb has been amputated
Analgesia	:	The inability to feel pain
Anecdote	:	A short, amusing story about something
Annal	:	A record of the events of one year
Annihilate	:	To destroy completely
Anonymous	:	A letter, poem etc., whose author is unknown
Antedate	:	To be of an earlier date
Antibody	:	A blood protein produced in response to and counteracting a specific antigen
Antidote	:	A medicine that counteracts the effect of another medicine
Antigen	:	A toxin or other foreign substance which induces an immune response in the body
Apathy	:	Lack of interest, enthusiasm, or concern
Appraisal	:	An act of assessing something or someone
Apprentice	:	A person who works for a skilled employer in order to learn a skill

Aquatic	: Of animals living in water
Arbitrator	: A person appointed to settle dispute
Architect	: A person who designs building
Archive	: A place where government/public records are kept
Arena	: A level area surrounded by seating, in which sports, entertainments, and other public events are held
Arid	: Having little or no rain
Arsonist	: A person who commits the criminal act of deliberately setting fire to property
Artisan	: Expert in any skill of hand
Ascetic	: A religious person with strict way of life
Assertive	: One who expresses one's opinion firmly but politely
Assiduous	: Showing great care and perseverance
Astrophysicist	: An expert in the branch of astronomy concerned with the physical nature of stars and other celestial bodies
Asylum	: A place of refuge and safety
Auctioneer	: A person who conducts auction
Audacious	: Showing a willingness to take surprisingly bold risks
Auditor	: A person who conducts official inspection of a company's account
Auditorium	: A building where an audience sits
Autobiography	: Life story of a man written by himself
Autopsy	: Examination of the dead body
Avaricious	: One who is greedy for money
Axiom	: A statement or proposition of truth
Bachelor	: A man who is not and has never been married
Ballad	: Long song or poem
Behead	: To cut off the head
Belligerents	: Nations engaged in war
Bibliography	: Collection of names of books useful for the purpose
Bifurcate	: To cut something into two pieces
Bigamy	: Practice of having two wives or husbands
Bigot	: One who has narrow and prejudiced religious views
Bilingual	: A person who speaks two languages
Biography	: An account of somebody's life written by another person
Biopsy	: Examination of the tissue of a diseased person
Blizzard	: A severe snowstorm with high winds and low visibility
Bohemian	: One who does not follow the usual rules of social life
Bottleneck	: A situation that stops an activity from progressing
Boulevard	: A broad road bordered with trees
Bouquet	: An attractively arranged bunch of flowers
Brittle	: Hard but liable to be easily broken
Bully	: A person who uses his strength or power to frighten or hurt others
Burglar	: A person who breaks into a house in order to steal
Callous	: Showing or having an insensitive and cruel disregard for others
Canine	: Of, relating to, or resembling a dog or dogs
Cannibal	: Somebody who eats human flesh

Capsize	:	To sink boat or ship
Caricature	:	A picture of a person or a thing drawn in such a highly exaggerated manner to cause laughter
Carnivorous	:	Flesh eating animals
Cascade	:	A small waterfall or group of waterfalls flowing down a rocky hill side
Cataclysm	:	Sudden and violent change
Catalogue	:	A list of books
Cathedral	:	A very big church
Cavalry	:	Soldiers who fight on horseback
Ceasefire	:	An agreement between two countries or groups to stop fighting
Cemetery	:	Place of burial
Centenary	:	Celebration of a hundredth year, once a century
Centurion	:	The commander of a century in the ancient Roman army
Ceramics	:	Art of making pots etc. from clay
Chant	:	Say a prayer in singing voice
Chaotic	:	Situation in which everything is happening in a confused way
Chauffeur	:	A person employed to drive a private car
Circumstantial	:	Clues available at a scene
Cocktail	:	An alcoholic drink consisting of a spirit or several spirits mixed with ingredients, such as fruit juice, lemonade, or cream
Colleague	:	A co-worker or a fellow-worker in the same institution
Colony	:	A group of people of one nationality or ethnic group living in a foreign country
Compositor	:	A person who arranges typing keys or printing text in a printing machine
Concubinage	:	Living together of a man and women without being married to each other
Concurrent/Coincident	:	
Concomitant	:	Happening at the same time
Congenital	:	Belonging or pertaining to an individual from birth
Congregation	:	A group of people gathered for religious worship
Connoisseur	:	A person who can appreciate art, music etc.,
Conservatory	:	A greenhouse, esp. one attached to a house
Consolidate	:	To combine into a single stronger and more effective whole
Constellation	:	Group of stars
Constipated	:	Repressed or inhibited
Contemporary	:	Men living in the same age
Contingency	:	A future event or circumstance that is possible but cannot be predicted with certainty
Convalescence	:	The gradual return to good health after a period of illness or medical treatment
Convent	:	A place where nuns live
Convoy	:	A group of vehicles travelling together
Cosmetician	:	A person who sells or applies cosmetics as an occupation
Credential	:	A qualification, achievement, personal quality, or aspect of a person's background typically when used to indicate that they are suitable for something
Credible	:	That which can be believed
Credulous	:	A person who believes easily whatever he is told
Criterion	:	A principle or standard by which something may be judged or decided

Crude	:	Not processed or refined, Rude
Crusade	:	A war of religions
Cuisine	:	A style or method of cooking, especially as characteristic of a particular country or region
Cynic	:	One who questions everything
Debonair	:	Confident, good looking and charming
Debut	:	A person's first appearance or performance
Defamation	:	The action of damaging the good reputation of someone
Defection	:	The abandonment of one's country or cause
Delegate	:	To transfer one's authority to another
Demagogue	:	A politician who rouses people's feeling for own benefit
Despicable	:	Deserving hatred or contempt
Dessert	:	The sweet course eaten at the end of a meal
Destitute	:	The state of being miserable bereft of all possessions
Deteriorate	:	To go from bad to worse
Dexterous	:	Skilful at handling things
Diplomacy	:	Art of dealing with people in a tactful way
Directory	:	A book of names and addresses
Diva	:	A famous female singer of popular music
Documentary	:	A television or radio programme providing factual report on a subject
Dominion	:	An area controlled by a ruler
Downpour	:	A heavy rainfall
Drought	:	Dry weather with no rainfall
Dynasty	:	Succession of rulers belonging to one family
Eccentric	:	One who has strange habits
Economical	:	Avoiding wastage, Careful in the spending of money, time etc.
Edible	:	A thing that is fit to be eaten
Effeminate	:	Of manners more like those of a woman than a man
Egoist (also Egotist):	:	A person who is selfish, self absorbed and self centred, One who thinks only for oneself
Elegy	:	A song sung at the death of a person
Eligible	:	One who is qualified for selection
Elucidate	:	To explain something mysterious or difficult
Emancipation	:	The process of being set free from political or social restrictions
Emigrant	:	One who goes to settle in another country
Empathy	:	The ability to understand and share the feelings of another
Encyclopedia	:	Book that gives information about every branch of knowledge
Endemic	:	A disease that occurs within a specified area, region or locale
Entrepreneur	:	A person who organizes and operates a business or businesses, taking on greater than normal financial risks in order to do so
Epicure/Epicurean :	:	One who is given to pleasures of the flesh
Epidemic	:	An outbreak of a disease that spreads among a large group of people quickly and extensively
Epilogue	:	A short poem or speech addressed to the spectators after the conclusion of a drama, concluding part of a literary work

Epitaph	:	Words written on the tomb of a person
Equilibrium	:	A state of perfect balance
Equivocal	:	Of doubtful character or sincerity; dubious
Espionage	:	Practice of employing spies in war
Eternal	:	Lasting or existing forever; without end or beginning
Evacuate	:	To shift people from a place of danger to a safer place
Exonerate	:	Free somebody from blame or guilt; free somebody from an obligation
Extempore/		
Impromptu	:	A speech or a presentation made without previous preparation
Fable	:	A story in which animals or objects speak and give wholesome moral lesson
Facsimile	:	An exact copy
Famine	:	Extreme scarcity of food
Fanatic	:	Somebody who has extreme and sometimes irrational enthusiasms or especially in religion or politics
Fancy	:	Created from the imagination rather than from life
Fastidious	:	A person who is concerned that even the smallest details should be just person difficult to please
Fauna	:	The animals of a particular region
Feint	:	Pretended Attack
Feminist	:	One who believes in giving equal opportunity to women in all fields
Fidelity	:	Faithfulness in behavior
Fling	:	A short period of enjoyment or wild behavior
Flip-flop	:	An abrupt reversal of policy
Flora	:	Plants of a particular region
Forerunner	:	A person or thing that precedes the coming or development of someone or something else
Fossils	:	Remains of prehistoric animal or plant preserved by being buried in earth
Fraud	:	Act of deceiving somebody in order to make money
Fugitive	:	One who runs away from justice or the law
Futurist	:	One who can predict future
Garrison	:	A group of soldiers living in a town or a fort, and defending it
Geek	:	An unfashionable or socially inept person
Germicide	:	A medicine that kills germs
Gesture	:	Movement of body to express something
Gimcrack	:	Flimsy or poorly made but deceptively attractive
Gimmick	:	A trick or device intended to attract attention, publicity, or business
Gladiator	:	One who fights with another person or animals
Glutton	:	One who eats too much
Gourmand	:	One who likes eating a lot
Gourmet	:	One who likes or knows about good food
Gracious	:	Courteous, kind, and pleasant
Granary	:	A storehouse for threshed grain
Gregarious	:	Of animals which live in flocks/herds
Gullible	:	One who is easily deceived
Hag	:	An ugly woman

Haggard	:	Looking exhausted and unwell, especially from fatigue, worry, or suffering
Hallucination	:	Seeing something that is not actually present
Hamlet	:	A small village or group of houses
Haphazard	:	With no particular order or plan
Haunt	:	Visit a place often
Hedonist	:	One who believes that gaining pleasure is the most important thing in life
Herbivorous	:	An animal that eats only grass or other plants
Heresy	:	Opinion contrary to accepted doctrines
Hierarchy	:	A system or organization in which people or groups are ranked one above the other according to status or authority
Hijack	:	To forcibly take control of a vehicle
Homophones	:	Two words different in spelling and meaning but pronounced alike
Honorarium	:	An emolument over and above fixed income or salary
Honorary	:	One who offers his services without charging for it
Hostility	:	Intense aggression or anger; state of antagonism
Humanist	:	An advocate or follower of the principles of attaching prime importance to human rather than divine or supernatural matters
Humanitarian	:	One who feels sympathetic towards human beings
Hurricane	:	Violent storm
Hyperbole	:	An exaggerated statement
Iconoclast	:	One who breaks the established traditions and image
Idolatry	:	The worship of idols or images
Illegal	:	That which is against law
Illegible	:	A handwriting that cannot be read
Illicit	:	A trade that is prohibited by law or prevailing social standards
Illiterate	:	A person who cannot read or write
Illustrious	:	Well-known and respected for past achievements
Imminent	:	That is sure to happen
Immune	:	Free from infection
Impostor/Hypocrite:	:	One who pretends to be what he is not
Impracticable	:	That which cannot be practiced
Imprudent	:	Not showing care for consequence of the action
Impunity	:	Exemption from punishment, Without risk of punishment
Inaccessible	:	That which cannot be reached
Inaudible	:	A sound that cannot be heard
Incognito	:	Travelling under the name other than one's own
Incorrigible	:	One who cannot be corrected
Incredible	:	That which cannot be believed
Indefatigable	:	One incapable of being tired
Indefensible	:	That which cannot be defended
Indelible	:	That which cannot be effaced
Indifferent	:	Having no particular interest
Indispensable	:	Something that is essential and cannot be dispensed with
Inedible	:	Not suitable for eating
Ineligible	:	Someone not fit to be chosen

Inevitable	:	That which cannot be avoided
Inexplicable	:	That which cannot be explained
Infallible	:	One who does not make mistakes, A remedy which never fails
Infantry	:	Soldiers who fight on foot
Inflammable	:	Something that is quickly and easily set on fire and burned
Inflammable	:	That which burns easily
Ingenious	:	Skilful in inventing
Ingenuous	:	Innocent and unsuspecting
Insatiable	:	That which cannot be satisfied
Insolvent	:	One who is unable to pay his debts
Insomnia	:	Inability to sleep
Intangible	:	That cannot be touched
Intermediary	:	One who mediates to settle disputes
Intermission	:	An interval between parts of a play or film, Interval
Intestate	:	One who dies without a will
Introspection	:	The action of looking within or into one's own mind
Introvert	:	One person who enters without any invitation
Intuition	:	Immediate response by the mind without reasoning
Investigation	:	Careful and thorough enquiry
Invincible	:	That which cannot be conquered
Invisible	:	That which cannot be seen
Invocation	:	Call upon God or any other power (like law) etc. for help or protection
Invulnerable	:	That which cannot be hurt
Irrelevant	:	Not connected with the main point
Irreparable	:	A loss of damage that cannot be compensated
Irritable	:	A man who is easily irritated
Iterate	:	To perform or utter repeatedly
Itinerant	:	One who journeys from place to place
Jibe	:	An insulting remark
Jovial	:	Cheerful and friendly
Juggler	:	A person who tosses a number of objects in air and balances them
Jurisdiction	:	A fixed territory in which authority can be exercised
Jury	:	A body of persons appointed to hear evidence and give their verdict in trials
Juxtapose	:	Placing a thing beside another
Knell	:	Sound of the funeral bell
Landscape	:	The complete view of a place
Lapidist	:	One who cuts precious stones
Laudable	:	A person who deserves all praise
Laxative	:	A medicine used to loosen the stuff in the bowels
Lease	:	A legal agreement allowing the use of something
Ledger	:	A book of accounts showing debits and credits
Legacy	:	The property left to someone by a will
Legend	:	A traditional popular but unconfirmed story
Lexical	:	Relating to words or vocabulary

Liar	: An underground living place for big animals
Ligament	: Tough tissues in joints
Linguist	: One who is good at foreign language
Logic	: Science of reasoning
Loyalty	: Firm in one's support and friendship
Lunatic	: A mad person
Luxuriant	: Thick and profuse in growth
Lyric	: Expressing the writer's emotions in brief and stanza
Maiden	: The first speech made by a person
Male chauvinist	: One who believes in the dominance of man over woman
Mammal	: An animal of a class that is distinguished by the possession of hair or fur, the secretion of milk by females for the nourishment of the young, and (typically) the birth of live young
Mandatory	: Required by law
Manifesto	: A written declaration of government or a political party
Manoeuvre	: Use of trick for personal benefit
Materialism	: Giving importance to money and material things
Matinee	: A cinema show held in the afternoon
Matrilineal	: Of or based on kinship with the mother or the female line
Maze	: A complex network of paths or passages
Mediate	: To try to settle a dispute between two other parties
Medieval	: Belonging to the Middle Ages
Meditation	: Deep in thought
Memoirs	: Memorable recollection of the experiences of one's life
Mercenary	: Somebody who works or serves only for personal profit. Also, a professional soldier paid to fight for an army.
Metallurgy	: The branch of science concerned with the properties of metals and their production and purification
Metaphysics	: The branch of philosophy dealing with abstract concepts
Mimicry	: A humorous imitation of a person's activity
Mint	: A place where money is coined
Mocktail	: A non-alcoholic drink consisting of a mixture of fruit juices or other soft drinks
Momentous	: An occasion of great importance
Monastery	: A building in which monks live
Monk	: A member of a religious community of men typically living under vows of poverty, chastity, and obedience
Monologue	: A long speech by one person in a play or film
Monopoly	: Sole right to make and sell some invention
Monotheist	: One who believes in a single God
Monumental	: Great in importance, extent or size
Moot	: Subject to debate or uncertainty
Mortal	: Subject to death
Mortgage	: A legal agreement by which a person borrows money from a bank usually to buy a house
Mummy	: Body of a human being or animal embalmed for burial

Mystic	:	One who seeks oneness with God
Namesake	:	Somebody or something with the same name as somebody or something else
Narcissism	:	Excessive indulgence to self
Narcotic/Opiate	:	A medicine for producing sleep
Nepotism	:	The practice of giving undue favour to one's relatives
Neurotic	:	A person suffering from nervous breakdown
Niche	:	A hollow place in a wall for a statue
Nimble	:	Quick and light in movement or action; agile
Nomad	:	Member of tribe that wanders from place to place
Nomenclature	:	A system of naming things
Nostalgia	:	Home sickness or sentimental longing for the past
Notorious	:	One who is known widely but usually unfavourably
Novice/Tyro/		
Neophyte	:	One who is new to a profession
Numb	:	To cause to feel no pain
Numismatic	:	Collection of coins
Obligatory	:	Required by a moral or legal rule
Obsolete	:	One which is not in use; outdated
Omnipotent	:	One who is all-powerful
Omnipresent	:	One who is present everything
Omniscient	:	One who knows everything
Omnivorous	:	An animal or a human being that eats any kind of food
Opaque	:	That through which light cannot pass
Optimist	:	One who looks at the bright side of things; somebody positive
Orphan	:	A child whose parents are dead
Orphanage	:	A place where orphans are housed
Orthopaedics	:	The area of medicine that treats illnesses of bones
Pacifist	:	A person who opposes war or use of military force, A person who believes in the total abolition of war
Panacea	:	A supposed cure for all diseases or problems
Pandemonium	:	Wild and noisy disorder
Pantheism	:	Belief of God in nature
Pantry	:	A place where food is kept
Parable	:	A story (in Bible) intended to teach moral lesson
Paranoia	:	A mental disease when people are afraid of others
Parasite	:	A person supported by another and giving him/her nothing return
Parole	:	A temporary release allowed on certain conditions
Parsimony	:	Extreme unwillingness to spend money or use resources
Patrilineal	:	Inheriting or determining descent through the male line
Patrimony	:	Property inherited from one's father or ancestor
Pedagogue	:	One who likes teaching
Pedant	:	One who emphasizes greatly on rules in study
Pedestrian	:	One who goes on foot
Perennial	:	That which is everlasting
Periphery	:	Boundary of an area

Perpetual	:	Continuing for a long period of time without interruption
Philately	:	Collection of stamps
Philistine	:	One who does not care for art, literature etc.
Pioneer	:	The first man to research and develop a new knowledge or activity
Pious	:	Deeply religious
Plagiarist	:	One who copies from other writers
Podium	:	A small platform on which a person may stand to be seen by an audience, as when making a speech etc.
Polyglot	:	One who knows many languages
Polygyny	:	Marrying more than two females
Posthumous	:	A child born after the death of his father or a book published after the death of its author
Potable	:	Water fit for drinking
Predator	:	An animal which preys on other animals
Preface	:	An introduction to a book
Prejudiced	:	To be biased against
Premiere	:	The first performance of a play or film
Preoccupation	:	The state or condition of being preoccupied or engrossed with something
Priest	:	A person who performs religious ceremonies
Proclaim	:	Say publicly that something important is true
Prognosis	:	A forecast of the result of a disease or illness
Propensity	:	An inclination or natural tendency to behave in a particular way
Prophecy	:	A prediction of what will happen in the future
Prophet	:	One who foretells events correctly
Prosecute	:	Take legal action against somebody
Pseudonym	:	An imaginary name assumed by an author for disguise
Psyche	:	Innermost feeling
Psychic	:	One who has strong mental power
Psychosis	:	A severe mental disease
Pugnacity	:	Inclined to fight or be aggressive
Pyrotechnics	:	The art of making fireworks
Rabble	:	A disorderly crowd
Ransom	:	Money paid to get a person freed from captivity
Rattle	:	To make or cause to make a rapid succession of short, sharp knocking sounds
Recall	:	To bring (a fact, event, or situation) back into one's mind; remember
Reciprocate	:	To give and receive mutually
Recluse	:	A person who withdraws from the world to live in seclusion and often in solitude
Reconnaissance	:	Information gathering activity
Red-tapism	:	Too much official formality
Referendum	:	Asking everyone for an opinion
Reformatory	:	An institution for reforming young offenders
Refrain	:	A comment often repeated
Refuge	:	The state of being safe or sheltered from pursuit, danger, or difficulty
Regicide	:	Murder of the king
Remind	:	To cause (someone) to remember someone or something

Renegade	:	One who deserts a belief or party
Repatriate	:	To send back a person to his own country
Replica	:	An exact copy or model of something
Resort	:	A place for improving one's health
Retaliate	:	Give tit for tat
Review	:	A formal assessment of something
Revolutionary	:	person who advocates or engages in political revolution
Sabotage	:	Intentional damage to arrest production
Sacrilege	:	Violation of something holy or sacred
Samaritan	:	One who helps others
Sanatorium	:	an establishment for the medical treatment of people who are convalescing or have a chronic illness.
Sanctuary	:	A reserve for animals, birds etc their natural habitat
Sanctum	:	or Sanctorium - A very private place
Satire	:	Full of criticism and mockery
Sceptical	:	Having doubt over something
Scrupulous	:	Diligent, thorough, and extremely attentive to details (of a person or process)
Secular	:	A government in which all religions are honoured
Sedative	:	A drug taken for its calming or sleep-inducing effect
Sheath	:	A case in which sword is kept
Sinecure	:	An office with high salary but no work
Siren	:	A woman who is considered to be alluring or fascinating but also dangerous in some way
Slippery	:	That which cannot be captured
Somnambulist	:	One who walks in sleep
Somniloquist	:	Someone who talks while asleep.
Sonnet	:	A poem of fourteen
Soothing	:	Giving comfort
Soporific	:	A drug or other substance that induces sleep
Soprano	:	A singer with a high-pitched voice
Sot	:	One who is a habitual drunker
Souvenir	:	Something that reminds an event
Sporadic	:	Occurring at irregular intervals in time
Stable	:	A place where horses are kept
Stack	:	A pile of objects, typically one that is neatly arranged
Steam	:	To cook (food) by heating it in steam from boiling water
Stimulant	:	A substance that raises levels of physiological or nervous activity in the body
Stoic	:	A person who is indifferent to pleasure or pain, a person who is unaffected by emotions
Subjugate	:	To bring under dominion or control
Sublimate	:	To transform into a purer or idealized form
Subservient	:	Too willing to obey other people
Superfluous	:	More than what is needed
Sycophant	:	A servile self seeker who attempts to win favour by flattering influential people
Synagogue	:	A place of worship of the Jews

Tariff	:	A list or table of duties payable on exports or imports
Tautology	:	A statement in which you say the same thing twice in different words
Teetotaler	:	A person who abstains from alcoholic drinks
Teller	:	A person in a bank dealing with customers' transaction
Temperate	:	A climate that is neither extremely hot nor cold
Tempo	:	The speed of music
Theism	:	Belief in the existence of a god or gods, specifically of a creator who intervenes in the universe
Theist	:	One who believe in God
Theocracy	:	Rule by priest
Theology	:	Study of religion
Thesaurus	:	Dictionary of synonyms
Tomboy	:	A girl who enjoys violent games
Toxic	:	Something that is poisonous or unhealthy
Transitory/ Momentary	:	That which lasts for a short time
Translucent	:	That through which light can partly pass
Transparent	:	A substance that allows light to pass through with little or no interruption so that objects on the other side can be clearly seen
Trek	:	Long hard journey especially on foot
Tribute	:	A statement made in acknowledgment, gratitude, or admiration
Triennial	:	Taking place once every three years
Troop	:	A group of artists
Truant	:	One who remains absent without permission
Tycoon	:	A wealthy, powerful person in business or industry
Unanimous	:	Done without opposition, complete agreement
Usurer	:	Somebody who loans money to other people and charges them exorbitant or unlawful interest on it
Usurper	:	A person who seizes something without the right to do so
Utopia	:	An imaginary ideal state
Uxorious	:	One extremely fond of one's wife
Vagabond	:	Moving from place to place without a fixed home
Vampire	:	A corpse that rises nightly from its grave to drink the blood of the living
Vandal	:	One who damages public property
Vegetarian	:	Somebody who doesn't eat meat or fish
Venal	:	Showing or motivated by susceptibility to bribery
Venerable	:	Given a lot of respect
Venial	:	A pardonable offense
Verbatim	:	Corresponding word for word translation
Versatile	:	Able to adopt oneself readily to many situations
Veteran	:	Somebody who is considerably experienced in something
Virtuoso	:	A person highly skilled in music or another artistic pursuit
Visionary	:	One who realizes the future situation wisely
Vocalist	:	A singer
Voluntary	:	Of one's own free will

Volunteer	:	One who offers one's services
Voracious	:	One who is very eager for knowledge and reads a lot
Vulnerable	:	To be affected easily by something
Vulpine	:	Of or relating to a fox or foxes
Wag	:	A jocular person who is full of amusing anecdotes
Waif	:	A thin and homeless child
Wardrobe	:	A place where clothes are kept
Widow	:	A woman whose husband has died
Widower	:	A man whose wife has died
Windfall	:	An unexpected piece of good fortune
Witty	:	Amusingly clever in perception and expression
Wrath	:	Extreme anger
Zealous	:	Having enthusiasm and a sense of purpose
Zymology	:	Study of enzymes

(A) PHOBIAS RELATED WORDS:

Phobia	unreasonable, unrealistic and excessive fear to a particular object, objects or situation	enochlophobia	fear of crowds
achluophobia	fear of darkness	febriphobia	fear of fever
acousticophobia	fear of noise	gerascophobia	fear of growing old
acrophobia	fear of heights	heliophobia	fear of the sun
agliophobia	fear of pain	iatrophobia	fear of doctors
ailurophobia	fear of cats	insectophobia	fear of insects
androphobia	fear of men	kenophobia	fear of empty spaces
anthophobia	fear of flowers	lachanophobia	fear of vegetables
arachnophobia	fear of spiders	lockiophobia	fear of childbirth
arithmophobia	fear of numbers	methyphobia	fear of alcohol
atychiphobia	fear of failure	motorphobia	fear of automobiles
aurophobia	fear of gold	noctiphobia	fear of night
bibliophobia	fear of books	nosocomophobia	fear of hospitals
cacophobia	fear of ugliness	ombrophobia	fear of rain
carcinophobia	fear of cancer	ophidiophobia	fear of snakes
ceraunophobia	fear of thunder	pharmacophobia	fear of medicines
chaetophobia	fear of hair	plutophobia	fear of wealth
chrometophobia	fear of money	rhytiphobia	fear of getting wrinkles
cibophobia	fear of money	siderodromophobia	fear of trains
cibophobia	fear of food	tachophobia	fear of speed
dentophobia	fear of dentists	trypanophobia	fear of injections
dipsophobia	fear of drinking	venustraphobia	fear of beautiful women

domatophobia
electrophobia

fear of houses
fear of vomiting

xenophobia
zoophobia

fear of strangers
fear of animals

(B) SPECIFIC PLACES RELATED WORDS:

Aerodrome	:	where aeroplanes are kept
Altar	:	An elevated place where religious rites are performed or sacrifices offered to gods
Apiary	:	where bees are kept
Aquarium	:	A glass-sided tank in which fish and other living aquatic plants or animals are kept
Archives	:	A place where documents and other materials of public or historical importance are preserved
Arsenal	:	where arms and weapons are stored/kept
Asylum	:	An institution for the care or relief of the unfortunate—the blind, mentally ill, etc
Aviary	:	A large cage or house in which birds are kept
Barracks	:	A building or group of buildings for lodging soldiers
Bakery	:	where bread/biscuits are manufactured
Billet	:	A lodging for a student or soldier in a private home or a public non-military building
Brewery	:	where wine is produced
Byre	:	A cow shed
Cache	:	A hiding place for ammunition, food, treasures, etc
Cage	:	enclosure for domestic animals/birds
Casino	:	A building or large room used for professional gambling, meetings and dancing
Cemetery	:	where dead bodies are buried
Cloakroom	:	luggage storing place at a railway station
Confectionery	:	where confections or sweets are prepared
Creche	:	A nursery for brief or day-long care of young children
Crematorium	:	where dead bodies are cremated
Dockyard	:	where ships are built
Distillery	:	where liquor/spirits/whiskey is produced
Dispensary	:	out-patient department where medicines are dispensed
Garage	:	where cars/vehicles are kept
Granary	:	storage place of grains
Guestannexe	:	special room in a house for guests
Graveyard	:	where dead bodies are buried
Hosiery	:	where knitted-wear is manufactured
Hatchery	:	where eggs/chickens are produced
Insectarium	:	An artificial enclosure for keeping or raising insects
Kiln	:	where bricks are baked
Mint	:	where coins are made
Morgue	:	A place where dead bodies are kept pending identification or cremation or burial
Mortuary	:	where dead bodies are kept temporarily
Museum	:	a building in which objects of historical, artistic, or cultural interest are stored
Orphanage	:	A house for orphans
Pharmacy	:	where medicines are prepared
Reformatory	:	An institution for reforming young offenders

Sanatorium	:	Established for treatment of invalids, especially of convalescents and the chronically sick
Scullery	:	A room for rough kitchen work, such as for cleaning utensils
Studio	:	where films are produced and processed
Tannery	:	where leather is processed and produced
Treasury	:	where treasure (wealth) is kept
Wardrobe	:	an almirah in which clothes are kept
Zoo	:	where animals/birds are kept
Convent	:	where nuns live
Monastery	:	where monks live
Barracks	:	where soldiers live
Palace	:	where king lives
Hive	:	where bees live
Nest	:	where birds live
Byre	:	where cows live
Kennel	:	where dogs live
Stable	:	where horses live
Den	:	where lions live
Burrow	:	where rabbits live
Pen	:	where sheep live
Web	:	where spiders live
Lair	:	where tigers live

(C) FIELDS OF STUDY:

Acoustics	:	science of sound
Aerostatics	:	study of ballooning
Agronomy	:	study of scientific farming
Agrostology	:	study of grasses
Anthropology	:	the development of man
Archaeology	:	excavation and study of physical remains of early civilizations
Astronautics	:	science of space flight
Calisthenics	:	science of exercises for promoting beauty and strength.
Cosmography	:	description and mapping of the universe
Cryogenics	:	science of very low temperatures
Demography	:	science of vital and social statistics
Ecology	:	science of environment
Entomology	:	scientific study of insects
Ethnology	:	science of origin of races
Etiology	:	study of causes of diseases
Etymology	:	study of derivation of words
Eugenics	:	study of production of better offsprings
Genealogy	:	a record of family descent
Genetics	:	study of heredity of individuals
Geology	:	study of rocks, soils and minerals
Ichthyology	:	study of fishes

Meteorology	:	scientific study of weather conditions
Numismatics	:	study of coins and metals
Ornithology	:	study of birds.
Orthography	:	the science of spellings
Paleontology	:	study of past life forms through fossils
Philology	:	study of words or literature
Seismology	:	science of earthquakes and earth's movements
Sericulture	:	study of silk-worm breeding
Theology	:	study of religion
Toxicology	:	science and medical study of dealing with poisons

(D) WORDS RELATED WITH PHYSICAL CARE:

Anaesthetist	:	person trained to administer anaesthetics, during an operation
Cardiologist	:	doctor who specialises in the study of the heart and its functioning
Chiropodist, podiatrist	:	specialist in the minor ailments of the foot including bunions, corns etc.
Dermatologist	:	Physician who specialises in treating diseases of the skin
Gynaecologist	:	doctor who specialises in the cure of women, especially in matters concerning the reproductive organs
Internist	:	doctor who specialises in the large, general branch of medicine called internal medicine
Intern	:	medical graduate receiving clinical training in a hospital before being licensed to practice medicine
Neurologist	:	doctor who specialises in delivering babies and in medical problems related to childbirth
Obstetrician	:	doctor who specialises in preventing and correcting irregularities of the teeth
Orthopedist	:	doctor who specialises in correcting deformities of the skeletal system and treating diseases of the bones
Pediatrician	:	doctor who specialises in the care and treatment of babies and young children
Podiatrist	:	therapist who specialises in treating ailments of the feet
Otologist	:	doctor who specialises in ear
Nephrologist	:	kidney specialist
Oncologist	:	specialist in tumors and cancer

(E) TYPES OF PEOPLE:

Aesthete	:	Persons who is devoted to beauty in nature, art, painting, music etc.
Altruist	:	person who is selflessly concerned with the welfare of others
Ascetic	:	person who leads a simple, austere life, avoiding luxury and pleasure
Conservative	:	person who wants to preserve the existing order of things, feeling content or safe with things as they are
Exhibitionist	:	showoff, or person who tries to attract attention to himself by exaggerated or inappropriate behavior
Hypochondriac	:	person who worries constantly, usually without any real reason about the state of his health
Kleptomaniac	:	person who has an irresistible desire to steal and shoplift
Megalomaniac	:	person who suffers from delusions of greatness

Optimist	:	person who tends to look on the bright side of things
Paranoid	:	person who believes that other people are always planning against him, cheating and persecuting him
Pessimist	:	person who tends to look at the darker side of things
Pragmatist	:	person who believes that ideas have values only in terms of their practical consequence
Realist	:	person who believes in facts and who dislikes anything that seems impractical, theoretical, or utopian
Romantic	:	person who approaches everything in life emotionally and who enjoys adventure falling in love etc.

(F) TYPES OF ANIMALS:

Aquatic	:	animals living in or near water, such as fish, whales, ducks etc
Arboreal	:	animal living on trees, as most birds, monkeys, etc
Biped	:	an animal having only two feet, such as man, apes and birds
Carnivorous	:	an animal that feeds chiefly or exclusively on meat, like dogs, wolves, lions, tigers
Herbivorous	:	an animal that feeds mainly on vegetable matter, plant eating
Marsupial	:	order of mammals whose females nourish their new born in a pouch in the abdomen like kangaroos
Monotreme	:	a member of mammals, whose females lay and hatch eggs, like the duck
Nocturnal	:	animals that are more active during the night than in the day time like bats, certain birds etc
Oviparous	:	animals belonging to a class whose females lay and hatch eggs like birds, most fish and reptiles
Pachyderm	:	any of certain thick-skinned animals like elephant, hippopotamus and rhinoceros etc
Prehensile	:	animals in the limbs capable of or adapted for grasping or holding

(G) FIGURES OF SPEECH RELATED WORDS:

Alliteration	:	The use of several words together, all beginning with the same sound in order to make a special effect
Circumlocution	:	The practice of using too many words to express an idea, instead of saying it directly
Ellipsis	:	Practice of deliberately not including one or more words in a sentence that can still be understood by a reader
Euphemism	:	A polite word or expression that you use instead of a more direct one to avoid shocking
Hyperbole	:	A way of describing something by saying it is much bigger, smaller or worse than it actually is
Irony	:	the use of words that are opposite to what you really mean, often in order to be amusing
Metaphor	:	A way of describing something as something different and suggesting that it has similar qualities to that thing
Oxymoron	:	A deliberate combination of two words that seem to be the opposite of each other
Paradox	:	The use of statements that seem strange because they involve two ideas or qualities that are very different
Personification	:	The representation of a thing or a quality as a person, in literature or art
Pun	:	Amusing use of a word or phrase that has two meanings

Rhetorical question:	a question that you may ask as a way of making a statement, without expecting an answer
Simile	: An expression that describes something by comparing it with something else
Tautology	: Statement in which you say the same thing twice using different words in a way which is not necessary

(H) AREAS OF MEDICINE RELATED WORK:

Gynaecology	: The area of medicine that deals with conditions and illnesses that affect only women
Obstetrics	: The area of medicine that deals with the birth of children
Paediatrics	: The area of medicine that deals with children and their illness
Geriatrics	: The area of medicine that deals with old people and their illnesses
Oncology	: The area of medicine that deals with cancer and tumors
Cardiology	: The area of medicine that deals with the heart
Orthopedics	: The area of medicine that deals with illnesses or injuries that affect people's bones and muscles
Ophthalmology	: The area of medicine that deals with the eyes
Dentistry	: The study of mouth and teeth, or the treatment of diseases of the teeth
Orthodontics	: The skill or job of helping the teeth grow straight when they have not been growing correctly
Chiropody	: The treatment and prevention of foot injuries and diseases
Psychiatry	: The study and treatment of mental illness

(I) MANIA RELATED WORDS:

mania	: an excessive enthusiasm or desire; an obsession
anthomania	: an obsession of flowers
bibliomania	: an obsession of book collection
cynomania	: an obsession of dogs
demomania	: an obsession of crowd
dipsomania	: an obsession of alcohol
dromomania	: an obsession of travelling
ergomania	: an obsession of work
erotomania	: an obsession of sex (in female)
hedomania	: an obsession of pleasure
hippomania	: an obsession of horses
hodomania	: an obsession of travelling
kleptomania	: an obsession of stealing things
logomania	: an obsession of talking
megalomania	: an obsession of controlling other's life
mythomania	: an obsession of telling lies
narcomania	: an obsession of drugs
necromania	: an obsession of death/dead bodies
nymphomania	: an obsession of sex(in female)
ochlomania	: an obsession of mob
plutomania	: an obsession of wealth
poriomania	: an obsession of travelling

pyromania	:	an obsession of burning things
satyromania	:	an obsession of sex(in male)
sitomania	:	an obsession of eating
thanatomania	:	an obsession of death/dead bodies
theomania	:	an obsession of religion
verbomania	:	an obsession of talking
xenomania	:	an obsession of foreigners/foreign things

(J) PHILOSOPHY RELATED WORDS:

Activism	:	vigorous action
adventurism	:	taking risks
altruism	:	selflessness
animatism	:	a belief in a generalized, impersonal power
antagonism	:	opposition
anthropomorphism:	:	giving human form to god
antitheism	:	opposition to existence of god
archaism	:	retaining the old-fashioned
atheism	:	disbelief in god
benthamism	:	utilitarianism
dadaism	:	going against tradition
determinism	:	human action being determined by motives
erotism	:	sexual arousalment
escapism	:	escaping from reality
euphemism	:	saying the harsh in a milder way
euphuism	:	artificial writing
fatalism	:	fate ruling supreme
favourism	:	favouring someone unfairly
hedonism	:	pleasure being the last aim
humanism	:	devotion to human good
incivism	:	disloyalty to the nation
individualism	:	giving importance only to self
mercantilism	:	money being the real wealth
monotheism	:	belief in one god
narcissism	:	self-worship
nepotism	:	favouring unduly one's relative
non-conformism	:	not obeying any traditional doctrine
objectivism	:	impartial assessment
opportunism	:	taking advantage of the opportunity duly or unduly
pacifism	:	abolishing war
parochialism	:	narrow views
pessimism	:	hopelessness
plagiarism	:	using other's ideas without permission
pragmatism	:	actuality/matter-of-factness
probabiliorism	:	ethical living
probabilism	:	uncertainty

rationalism	:	supremacy of reason
stoicism	:	doing virtue being the only aim of man
transcendentalism	:	reality being beyond human experience

(K) OTHER WORDS RELATED TO CONDITIONS:

astigmatism	:	structural defect in eyes
daltonism	:	colour blindness
melanism	:	colour darkness
neologism	:	coining/using new words
parachronism	:	chronological error
paralogism	:	illogical reasoning
pelmanism	:	memory training
reductionism	:	breaking complex things into simpler parts

(L) SYSTEM OF GOVERNANCE RELATED WORDS:

autocracy	:	government by one person who holds all power
aristocracy	:	government by a privileged, wealthy small group
diarchy	:	government by two persons/bodies/rulers
gerontocracy	:	government by elderly men
hierocracy/		
theocracy	:	government by clergy class
matriarchy	:	government by only women
meritocracy	:	government by meritorious people
ochlocracy	:	government by mob
oligarchy	:	government by a small group
pantisocracy	:	rule of all equally
patriarchy	:	government by only men
plutocracy	:	government by the rich people
stratocracy	:	government by the army
technocracy	:	government by technological experts

(M) THERAPY RELATED WORDS:

acupuncture	:	curing by puncturing/inserting needles in body
aromatherapy	:	therapy using fragrant oils
chemotherapy	:	therapy using chemicals (in esp. cancer)
chiropractic	:	therapy by manipulating spine
herbotherapy	:	therapy using plants and herbs
hydrotherapy	:	therapy using water
hypnotherapy	:	therapy using hypnosis
naturopathy	:	therapy using natural things
osteopathy	:	therapy manipulating bones
phototherapy	:	therapy using light (ultraviolet, X-RAY etc.)
physiotherapy	:	therapy using exercise, massage
zonetherapy	:	therapy using foot massage

(N) LOVERS RELATED WORDS:

bibliophile	:	lover of books
bibliologist	:	lover of knowledge
cheirophile	:	lover of hands
carnivore	:	one who eats meat
cannibal	:	one who eats human flesh
connoisseur	:	lover of art and artistic creations
dendrophile	:	lover of trees
gourmet	:	lover of good food
globe-trotter	:	lover of travelling
hippophile	:	lover of horses
megalomaniac	:	lover of grandeur
mercenary	:	lover of money
materialist	:	lover of material things
narcissist	:	lover of self
paedophile	:	lover of children
padogophile	:	lover of feet
philologist	:	lover of words
pacifist	:	lover of peace
philanthropist	:	lover of mankind
warmonger	:	lover of war
zoophile	:	lover of animals

(O) PERSONALITIES/BELIFFS RELATED WORDS:

Amateur	:	A person who practices something for the love of it, not as a profession
Amazon	:	A tall, powerful, forceful woman
Anarchist	:	A person who believes that abolition of government or governmental restraint is the indispensable condition for full social and political liberty
Arrogant	:	Claiming too much; overbearing
Atheist	:	one who does not believe in God
Apostate	:	a person who renounces a religious or political belief or principle
Bankrupt	:	One who is unable to pay off one's debt
Bigot	:	one who is devoted to a particular creed intolerantly
Cannibal	:	A person who eats human flesh
Centenarian	:	A person who has reached hundred years of age
Charlatan	:	Someone who pretends to have special knowledge or ability
Conceited	:	Having an excessively favourable opinion of oneself
Connoisseur	:	One who has special skill and well-informed knowledge especially of the arts or fine food and wine
Coquette	:	A woman who flirts with men to win their attention and admiration
Cynic	:	Disinclined to believe in or recognize goodness or selflessness
Dastard	:	A mean, sneaking coward
Diffident	:	Lacking confidence in one's own ability, worth or fitness
Dilettante	:	A person who loves the fine arts but in a superficial way and without serious purpose
Effervescent	:	Bubbling; lively

Egocentric	:	Self-centered
Egoist	:	A self-centered or selfish person
Egotist	:	A conceited, boastful person
Epicure	:	A person of refined and fastidious taste, especially in food and wine
Fanatic	:	A person excessively enthusiastic, as in religion or politics
Fastidious	:	excessively particular, critical or demanding
Fatalist	:	A person who believes that all events are subject to fate, and happen by unavoidable necessity
Feminist	:	An advocate of women's rights, or of the movement for the advancement and emancipation of women
Garrulous	:	Talking too much
Gregarious	:	Fond of the company of others
Gullible	:	Easily deceived or cheated
Hedonist	:	One with a lifestyle devoted to seeking pleasure and self-gratification
Heretic	:	One who maintains religious opinions contrary to those accepted by his church
Humanitarian	:	One who has concern for the welfare and happiness of the people
Hypocrite	:	A person who falsely professes desirable or publicly approved qualities, beliefs or feelings
Iconoclast	:	A destroyer of images especially those set up for religious veneration
Ignoramus	:	An ignorant person
Illiterate	:	A person who cannot read and write
Immigrant	:	A person who comes to live permanently in a foreign country
Introvert	:	A person interested mainly in his or her own inner state and processes rather than the outside world
Jockey	:	A person who rides horses professionally in races
Loquacious	:	A person fond of talking
Martyr	:	A person who willingly suffers death rather than renounce his or her religious beliefs
Maverick	:	An unbranded animal, especially a motherless calf
Mimic	:	One who imitates the voice or gestures of another
Misanthrope	:	A hater of humankind
Misogamist	:	A hater of marriage
Misogynist	:	A woman-hater
Neurotic	:	A person suffering from nervous breakdown or a personality disorder typified by anxiety
Novice	:	A beginner
Paedophile	:	A person affected with sexual desire for children
Pantheist	:	A person with the belief that the universe is identical with divinity
Pedant	:	A person who makes an excessive or inappropriate display of learning
Pedestrian	:	A person who goes or travels on foot
Philanthropic	:	Doing good to others; benevolent
Philistine	:	A person who lacks in or is smugly indifferent to culture, aesthetic refinement
Phlegmatic	:	Not easily excited to action or display of emotion
Polyglot	:	Able to speak or write many languages
Precocious	:	Early in developing or reaching some stage of development
Quixotic	:	Extravagantly romantic in ideals or chivalrous in action

Recluse	:	A person who lives in seclusion or apart from society
Sadist	:	A person who derives pleasure, especially sexual, from inflicting pain, suffering or cruelty
Saturnine	:	Grave or gloomy
Sceptic	:	A person who questions the validity, authenticity or truth of something purported to be factual
Snob	:	A person who imitates or slavishly admires his/her social superiors and condescending to others
Sociable	:	Inclined to associate with or be in the company of others
Spendthrift	:	A person who spends money or wealth extravagantly and wastefully
Stoic	:	indifferent to pleasure or pain
Suave	:	Smoothly agreeable or polite
Teetotaler	:	A person who never drinks alcohol
Theist	:	one who believes in God
Truculent	:	Aggressive and discourteous
Vagabond	:	A person who wanders without settled habitation
Virago	:	A loud-voiced, ill-tempered woman
Virtuoso	:	A person with a good deal of knowledge of or interest in works of art, antiquities
Volunteer	:	A person who voluntarily offers himself for an undertaking or a service

(P) PROFESSIONS/OCCUPATIONS RELATED WORDS:

Acrobat	:	A performer of gymnastic feats that require agility, balance and coordination
Agronomist	:	an expert in soil management and production of field crops
Anthropologist	:	one who studies the origin, development and structure of people and their societies
Antiquary	:	a student of antiquities
Archaeologist	:	one who uncovers and studies the remains of early human cultures
Astrologer	:	One who interprets the influence of the heavenly bodies on human life
Astronomer	:	An expert in the science that deals with the material universe beyond the earth's atmosphere
Cartographer	:	one who is skilled in making maps and charts
Chandler	:	A person who makes or sells items of tallow or wax, as candles and soap
Charwoman	:	A woman hired to do general cleaning, as in an office
Choreographer	:	one who devises dance movements and patterns
Collier	:	A coal miner
Confectioner	:	A person who makes or sells candies, ice-creams, cakes etc
Cooper	:	A person who makes or repairs casks, barrels and tubes
Costermonger	:	A hawker of fruits, vegetables and fish
Croupier	:	The attendant who collects or pays money at a gaming table
Cutler	:	A person who produces, sells or repairs cutting instruments like knives
Etymologist	:	an expert in the derivation of words
Entomologist	:	one who studies insects
Florist	:	A person who grows or sells flowers and ornamental plants
Furrier	:	One who buys and sells, makes, repairs or cleans fur and fur garments
Glazier	:	A person who fits windows or the like with glass panes

Haberdasher	:	A seller of small sewing articles such as ribbons and tape
Ichthyologist	:	an expert in fishes
Janitor	:	An attendant, caretaker or doorkeeper
Juggler	:	One who performs juggling feats, as with balls and knives
Lapidary	:	A cutter of stones, especially gemstones
Lexicographer	:	A writer, editor or compiler of a dictionary
Mercer	:	A dealer in fine textiles and fabrics
Milliner	:	A person who creates or sells hats for women
Oculist	:	A specialist in diseases and defects of the eye
Ornithologist	:	study of birds
Ostler	:	A person who looks after horses at an inn
Pawnbroker	:	A broker who lends money on something deposited as security for repayment
Philatelist	:	One who collects or studies postage and revenue stamps and other materials relating to postal history
Philologist	:	a student of words and languages
Plagiarist	:	one who copies without acknowledgement
Poulterer	:	A dealer in poultry
Psychiatrist	:	one who studies, diagnoses and treats mental disorders
Scavenger	:	One who gathers something usable from discarded material like rubbish
Stevedore	:	A person or company engaged in loading or unloading of ships
Stoker	:	A labourer engaged to tend or fuel a furnace, especially one that generates steam
Tinker	:	A mender of pots and cans, usually travelling from place to place
Undertaker	:	One who manages funerals
Usurer	:	A person who lends money and charges interest especially at an exorbitant rate
Vintner	:	A person who makes or sells wines
Zoologist	:	one who studies the development and structure of animals

(Q) MEDICAL PROFESSION RELATED WORDS:

Anaesthetist	:	One who administers anaesthetic or agents producing insensibility in the body
Cardiologist	:	One who treats diseases of the heart
Chiropractor	:	One who treats diseases by manipulating the joints of the body, especially those of the spinal cord
Dermatologist	:	One who treats diseases of the skin
Gerontologist	:	One who treats illness of old people
Gynaecologist	:	A physician specializing in health maintenance and diseases related to the reproductive organs of women
Nephrologist	:	A specialist who deals with diseases of the kidney
Neurologist	:	One who deals with the diseases of the nervous system
Orthopaedist	:	A specialist in curing deformities arising from disease or injury of bones
Ophthalmologist	:	A physician specializing in the anatomy, functions and diseases of the eye
Optician	:	A person who examines the eyes and prescribes, makes or sells spectacles or contact lenses for the eye
Optometrist	:	A professional who examines eyes for defects of vision and eye disorders to prescribe corrective lenses or other treatment
Orthodontist	:	One who specializes in straightening and adjusting teeth

- Paediatrician** : A physician who specializes in development, care and diseases of children
Pathologist : A person who studies the causes and effects of diseases
Periodontist : One who specializes in treating diseases of the gums
Urologist : A specialist in diseases and abnormalities of the urinary tract and in their treatment

(R) GOVERNMENT RELATED WORDS:

- Anarchy** : A political and social disorder due to absence of governmental control
Bureaucracy : A government by a rigid hierarchy of administrators and petty officials
Coalition : An alliance, especially a temporary one, between factions, parties or states
Condominium : Joint sovereignty over a territory by several states
Democracy : A government by the people
Episcopacy : A government of the church by bishops
Fascism : The authoritarian form of government characterized by extreme nationalism, militarism, anti-communism and restrictions on individual freedom
Hegemony : Predominant influence or domination exercised by one nation over others
Hierarchy : Any system of persons or things ranked one above another
Isocracy : A government in which all individuals have equal political power
Kakistocracy : A government by the worst, least qualified, or most unscrupulous citizens
Polyarchy : A government in which power is invested in multiple people.
Republic : A state in which the supreme power rests in the body of citizens entitled to vote; is exercised by representatives chosen directly or indirectly by them
Stratocracy : A government by the military
Technocracy : A system of government in which technological experts manage and control economy, government and social system

@CUET_2024 BOOKS

(S) MILITARY AND WARFARE RELATED WORDS:

- Amnesty** : A general pardon
Armistice : A suspension of hostilities
Arsenal : A storehouse or factory for naval and military weapons and ammunition
Battery : A number of cannons or other offensive weapons with their equipment
Belligerent : A country waging war
Bivouac : A makeshift camp or camping place for soldiers
Conscription : A compulsory enrolment for service
Convoy : A ship or ships of war, or a supply of stores, under escort
Demobilise : To discharge from the army
Embargo : A temporary order issued by the admiralty to stop the arrival or departure of ships
Espionage : Spying
Guerilla : War warfare or harassment of the army by an irregular force, which operates in small bands and is often politically motivated
Munitions : Fortification
Reconnaissance : A preliminary survey of an area to locate the enemy forces, etc
Reveille : The sound of the drum or the bugle at daybreak in order to awaken soldiers
Salvo : A simultaneous discharge of bombs, etc., in salute or for other purpose

(T) MARRIAGE RELATED WORDS:

- Alimony** : A periodic allowance paid to a spouse or a former spouse for maintenance following a legal separation or divorce

Bigamy	:	Marriage with one person while being legally wedded to another
Celibate	:	A person who abstains from sexual relations
Monogamy	:	The condition of having only one spouse at a time
Polyandry	:	The practice condition of having more than one husband at one time
Polygamy	:	The condition of having more than one spouse, especially a wife, at a time

(U) KILLING RELATED WORDS:

Foeticide	:	Getting rid of/killing of foetus
Fratricide	:	Killing of one's own brother
Genocide	:	Systematic killing of a cultural or racial group
Homicide	:	Killing of one human being by another
Infanticide	:	Killing of a child
Matricide	:	Killing of one's mother
Parricide	:	Killing of a parent or other near relative
Patricide	:	Killing of one's father
Regicide	:	Killing of a king
Sororicide	:	Killing of one's sister
Suicide	:	Killing of oneself
Uxoricide	:	Killing of one's wife

(V) LITERARY RELATED WORDS:

Anecdote	:	A narrative, short in length, of an incident concerning the private life of a person
Autobiography	:	The story of a person's life written by the person himself
Biography	:	An account or history of the life of a person
Elegy	:	A serious or pensive poem
Epilogue	:	The concluding section of a book
Epitome	:	The abstract of a literary work
Eulogy	:	A speech or writing in praise of a person or thing
Hyperbole	:	An extravagant statement or figure of speech not meant to be taken in a literal sense
Parody	:	A satirical or humorous imitation of a serious piece of writing
Protagonist	:	The leading character of a literary work
Thesaurus	:	A dictionary of synonyms and antonyms

(W) BRANCHES OF SCIENCE:

Anatomy	:	Science of the physical structure of an animal or plant learned by dissection
Ballistics	:	Science or study of the motion of projectiles such as bullets, shells or bombs
Biochemistry	:	Discipline involving study of the chemistry of living things
Biology	:	Study of physical life
Botany	:	Science of plants
Cryptology	:	The science and study of cryptanalysis (procedures, processes, methods, etc. used to translate or interpret secret writings such as codes and ciphers) and cryptography (application of techniques of secret writing)
Hydrology	:	Science dealing with the occurrence, circulation, distribution, and properties of water on earth and in atmosphere
Morphology	:	Branch of biology dealing with the form and structure of organisms

Mycology	:	Branch of biology dealing with fungi
Oology	:	Science or study of birds' eggs
Orology	:	The scientific study of mountains
Pedagogy	:	Science or art of teaching
Penology	:	Study of punishment in its relation to crime
Phonology	:	Study of sounds of a language, their history and changes
Photometry	:	Branch of physics dealing with measurements of the intensity of light, distribution, illumination and luminous flux
Phycology	:	Branch of biology dealing with algae
Pomology	:	Study of fruit growing
Selenology	:	Science dealing with the moon, especially its astronomical features
Zoology	:	Scientific study of animals

(X) MEDICINE AND DISEASE RELATED WORDS:

Aetiology	:	The medical study of the causation of disease
Anaesthesia	:	General or local insensibility
Anaesthetic	:	Producing insensibility; (n.) an anaesthetic agent
Analgesic	:	(Anodyne) A medicine that relieves pain
Antibiotic	:	Inhibiting the growth of another organism, especially micro-organisms cause infectious diseases
Antidote	:	Something that counteracts a poison
Antiseptic	:	Relating to inhibition or destruction of bacteria by a chemical agent
Chemotherapy	:	Treatment of cancer and infectious diseases by using chemical compounds that against the cancerous tissue or invading micro-organisms
Cicatrice	:	Scar over a wound that has healed convalescence Gradual recovery of one's health and strength
Emetic	:	Causing vomiting
Endemic	:	A disease prevalent or regularly found among a certain set of people or in an area
Geriatrics	:	Medical care of old people
Immunity	:	The condition of being protected against an infection or disease owing to the presence of antibodies in the body that act against the antigens
Narcotic	:	Inducing sleep or dulling sensation, physical or mental
Prognosis	:	Forecasting the course of a disease
Quarantine	:	A period of compulsory isolation for preventing the spread of an infection
Vaccination	:	Innoculate with vaccine of a disease in order to produce it in mild form and prevent serious attack

(Y) GROUP RELATED TERMS:

Army	of soldiers	Gang	of robbers
Assembly	of people	Garland	of flowers
Band	of singers	Ground	of islands
Bevy	of girls	Heap	of stones/ruins
Bouquet	of flowers	Herd	of cattle

Bunch	of keys	Litter	of pigs/pups
Bundle	of hay/sticks	Mob	of rioters
Brood	of chickens	Pack	of hounds/playing-cards
Chain	of mountains	Panel	of Jurymen
Choir	of singers	Pile	of arms
Cloud	of locusts	Regiment	of soldiers
Cluster	of stars	Sheaf	of arrows
Collection	of stamps	Shoal	of fish
Company	of soldiers	Stud	of horses
Congregation	of worshippers	Suite	of clothes
Constellation	of stars	Swarm	of bees
Convey	of partridges	Team	of horses/oxen players
Crew	of sailors	Train	of followers
Crowd	of people	Throng	of people
Drove	of cattle	Troop	of horsemen
Fleet	of ships	Troupe	of actors
Flight	of steps	Tribe	of natives
Flock	of birds/geese		

(Z) SOME OTHER WORDS:

Booklet	:	a small book
Capsule	:	a small box, a small detachable compartment of an airplane or spacecraft, a small soluble container for enclosing a dose of medicine
Darling	:	little dear, a person tenderly loved
Duckling	:	a young duck
Islet	:	a small island
Leaflet	:	a small leaf, as a leaf of folded paper
Molecule	:	a small mass; smallest particle of an element or compound
Morsel	:	a small bite; a small piece of anything
Particle	:	a small part of piece of matter
Linguistics	:	science and study of language

Exercise

Direction: In the following questions, out of the four alternatives choose the one which can be substituted for the given words/sentence.

- A person with a long experience of any occupation
(a) Veteran (b) Genius (c) Seasoned (d) Ambidextrous
- Words written on a tomb
(a) Epithet (b) Epigraph (c) Soliloquy (d) Epitaph

3. Stealthily done
(a) Devious (b) Nefarious (c) Surreptitious (d) Villainous
4. Something no longer in use
(a) Desolate (b) Absolute (c) Obsolete (d) Primitive
5. One not concerned with right or wrong
(a) Moral (b) Amoral (c) Immoral (d) Immortal
6. A person who opposes war or use of military force
(a) Fascist (b) Pacifist (c) Narcissist (d) Fatalist
7. Severely abusive writing in journals
(a) Imaginary (b) Speculative (c) Scurrilous (d) Sarcastic
8. Call upon God or any other power (like law) etc. for help or protection
(a) Invocation (b) Involution (c) Inundation (d) Revocation
9. Fear of being enclosed in a small closed space
(a) Agoraphobia (b) Claustrophobia (c) Xenophobia (d) Paranoia
10. One who has become dependent on something or drugs is
(a) Adamant (b) Edict (c) Addict (d) Derelict
11. Succession of rulers belonging to one family
(a) Dynasty (b) Lineage (c) Ancestry (d) Progeny
12. To cut something into two pieces
(a) Severe (b) Sever (c) Sewer (d) Sow
13. Flat metal or Porcelain plate fixed on a wall as an ornament or memorial
(a) Tabloid (b) Poster (c) Board (d) Plaque
14. Act of deceiving somebody in order to make money
(a) Fraud (b) Robbery (c) Pickpocket (d) Theft
15. A short poem or speech addressed to the spectators after the conclusion of a drama
(a) Prologue (b) Dialogue (c) Epilogue (d) Monologue
16. Capable of being understood in either of two or more possible senses, and therefore not definite
(a) Amphibious (b) Ambiguous (c) Amorphous (d) Confusing
17. A person who is unable to pay his debts
(a) Solvent (b) Banker (c) Insolvent (d) Lender
18. Anything which is no longer in use
(a) Obscure (b) Obsolete (c) Pristine (d) Lapsed
19. A person coming to a foreign land to settle there
(a) Immigrant (b) Emigrant (c) Tourist (d) Settler
20. Something capable of being done
(a) Probable (b) Feasible (c) Tenable (d) Explicable
21. One who goes to settle in another country
(a) Immigrant (b) Alien (c) Citizen (d) Emigrant
22. One who hates mankind
(a) Philanthropist (b) Terrorist (c) Misanthrope (d) Misogynist

23. Belonging to all parts of the world
(a) Versatile (b) Universal (c) Cosmopolitan (d) Secular
24. One who walks on ropes
(a) Funambulist (b) Upholsterer (c) Acrobat (d) Aviator
25. The study of the origin and history of words
(a) Linguistics (b) Etymology (c) Verbose (d) Anthology
26. A person who breaks into a house in order to steal
(a) Poacher (b) Bandit (c) Intruder (d) Burglar
27. The study of maps
(a) Cartography (b) Geography (c) Geology (d) Atlas
28. Tough tissues in joints
(a) Ligaments (b) Endoderm (c) Muscles (d) Fibre
29. The first model of a new device
(a) Prototype (b) Sculpture (c) Icon (d) Photography
30. A building where an audience sits
(a) Aquarium (b) Gymnasium (c) Auditorium (d) Stadium
31. Give and receive mutually
(a) Present (b) Reciprocate (c) Compromise (d) Approve
32. One who can think about the future with imagination and wisdom
(a) Dreamer (b) Seer (c) Idealist (d) Visionary
33. A doctor who treats children
(a) Pediatrician (b) Pedagogue (c) Pedestrian (d) Paedophile
34. One who studies election trends by means of opinion polls
(a) Entomologist (b) Psephologist (c) Demagogue (d) Eugenist
35. One who believes in offering equal opportunities to women in all spheres
(a) Male chauvinist (b) Feminist (c) Fatalist (d) Futurist
36. Killing of a child
(a) Homicide (b) Genocide (c) Infanticide (d) Suicide
37. The art of good eating
(a) Gastronomy (b) Astronomy (c) Vegetarianism (d) Gourmet
38. One who is indifferent to pleasure or pain
(a) Stoic (b) Stylist (c) Cynic (d) Psychic
39. Lasting only for a moment
(a) Momentous (b) Momentary (c) Trivial (d) Petty
40. To seize control of a vehicle in order to force it to go to a new destination, or demand something
(a) Attack (b) Contract (c) Hijack (d) Detour
41. That which lasts for a short time
(a) Regular (b) Transitory (c) Rotatory (d) Repository
42. Ready to believe anything
(a) Credible (b) Incredible (c) Credulous (d) Incredulous

43. A four footed animal
(a) Tetraped (b) Quadruped (c) Polyped (d) Double-paired
44. A person who believes in the total abolition of war
(a) Socialist (b) Communist (c) Fascist (d) Pacifist
45. Constant efforts to achieve something
(a) Patience (b) Vigour (c) Attempt (d) Perseverance
46. Of unknown and unadmitted authorship
(a) Gullible (b) Anonymous (c) Unanimous (d) Vexation
47. Member of a band of robbers
(a) Fratricide (b) Brigand (c) Thief (d) Pirate
48. A person who is made to bear the blame due to others
(a) Innocent (b) Scapegoat (c) Ignoramus (d) Nincompoop
49. A person who brings goods illegally into the country
(a) Exporter (b) Importer (c) Smuggler (d) Deporter
50. Cutting of stone in the bladder
(a) Dichotomy (b) Tubectomy (c) Vasectomy (d) Lithotomy

Solutions

1.	a	2.	d	3.	c	4.	c	5.	b	6.	b	7.	c	8.	a	9.	b	10.	
11.	a	12.	b	13.	d	14.	a	15.	c	16.	b	17.	c	18.	b	19.	a	20.	
21.	d	22.	c	23.	c	24.	c	25.	b	26.	d	27.	a	28.	a	29.	a	30.	
31.	c	32.	d	33.	a	34.	b	35.	b	36.	c	37.	a	38.	a	39.	b	40.	
41.	b	42.	c	43.	b	44.	d	45.	d	46.	b	47.	b	48.	b	49.	c	50.	



Antonyms/ Synonyms

In this part of the book we have tried to cover the most important and also the most difficult part for the students. So the students need to practice and study this section on the daily basis and try to remember at least 10 new words. Antonyms/synonyms section is very vast. We have tried to compile this portion of the book by inserting as many important words as possible.

'A'			
	Word	Synonyms	Antonyms
1.	Accusation	Indictment, charge, blame	Defence, save
2.	Accolade	Commendation, praise	Criticism, condemnation
3.	Absurd	Foolish, irrational	Wise, Rational
4.	Abysmal	Terrible, horrible	Decent, good
5.	Accomplice	Assistant, confederate	Opponent, obstructer
6.	Acquittal	Release, Liberation	Conviction
7.	Admonish	Chide, Rebuke	Encourage, embolden
8.	Affable	Genial, amiable, cordial	Haughty, rude
9.	Acumen	Sagacity, perception	Foolish, stupid
10.	Agony	Pain, distress, anguish	Ease, comfort
11.	Alien	Foreign, strange, exotic	Akin, Native
12.	Altruistic	Philanthropic, Unselfish	Selfish
13.	Anarchy	Disorder, Chaos	Order, rule
14.	Audacious	Brave, bold, dauntless	Modest, timid
15.	Atone	Expiate	Offend, confront
16.	Arid	Barren, dry, sterile	Fertile, fecund
17.	Anonymous	Unknown, unidentified	Known, identified
18.	Annoyance	Irritation, nagging	Comfort, pleasure
19.	Ambiguous	Vague, equivocal	Lucid, explicit
20.	Assiduous	Diligent, industrious	Idle, lazy, sloth
21.	Aversion	Dislike, Antipathy	Love, liking
'B'			
1.	Brevity	Shortness, brief, conciseness	Verbosity, Prolixity
2.	Bounty	Bonus, reward, gift	Rob, capture
3.	Boorish	Rustic, rough	Civilized, gentle
4.	Bias	Partiality, favour, prejudice	Impartiality, Justice
5.	Beguile	Lure, Charm, Entice	Dissuade, discourage
6.	Bemoan	Mourn, Lament, bewail	Rejoice, merry
7.	Banish	Abandon, expel	Admit, harbour
8.	Baleful	Noxious, Hurtful	Good, harmless

9.	Beckon	Call, invite, signal	Repel, push away
10.	Base	Abject, cheap, mean	Honourable, decent
11.	Bliss	Joy, ecstasy, felicity	Misery, sorrow
12.	Brash	Aggressive, proud	Meek, humble
'C'			Acquired, extraneous
1.	Congenital	Innate, inborn, natural	Reveal, disclose
2.	Conceal	Hide, disguise, cloak	Refusal, Rejection
3.	Compliance	Obedience, submission	Coax, cajole
4.	Compel	Force, oblige	Calm, tranquility
5.	Commotion	Bustle, tumult	Unattractive, Unappealing
6.	Comely	Attractive, Appealing	Small, tiny
7.	Colossal	Mammoth, huge	Polite, amiable
8.	Churlish	Sullen, Surly, rude	Soothe, comfort
9.	Chafe	Annoy, harass, vex	Harshness, Rudeness
10.	Clemency	Kindness, Tenderness	Harass, torture
11.	Coddle	Pamper, cosset	Praise, appreciate
12.	Castigate	Criticize, Censure	Supporter, Appreciative
13.	Censorious	Critical, Nagging	Morose, distressed
14.	Convivial	Sociable, Jovial, amicable	Nullify, Invalidate
15.	Corroborate	Confirm, substantiate	Honour, respect
16.	Contempt	Disdain, Insult	Ignore, hate
17.	Covet	Desire, want	Outspoken, Eloquent
18.	Coy	Shy, reticent, reserved	Brave, dauntless
19.	Craven	Cowardly, Timid	Artless, Guileless
20.	Crafty	Cunning, Deceitful	
'D'			Increase, magnify
1.	Dwindle	Decrease, Diminish	Active, operational
2.	Dorm	Inactive, latent	Happy, gay
3.	Dolorous	Doleful, Somber, Mournful	Ingest, Take in
4.	Disgorge	Expel, Spew, eject.	Angelic, good
5.	Diabolical	Devilish, Demonic, wicked	Agree, conform
6.	Dissent	Disagree, Deny	Happy, prize
7.	Dismay	Despair, Distress	Tidy, neat
8.	Disheveled	Untidy, Chaotic, disordered	Harmony, concord
9.	Discord	Conflict, Contention	Obscure, latent
10.	Discernible	Visible, Palpable	Replete, filled
11.	Devoid	Vacant, empty	Admire, praise
12.	Despise	Hate, disdain	Beneficial, good
13.	Detrimental	Harmful, evil	Respect, honour
14.	Deride	Mock, scorn, scoff	Shortage, scarcity
15.	Deluge	Flood, overflow, inundation	

16.	Dauntless	Bold, Fearless, brave	Fearful, timid, afraid
17.	Defunct	Obsolete, Outdated	Functional, fashion
'E'			
1.	Ecstatic	happiness, gay, rapturous	Miserable, distressed
2.	Effeminate	Feminine, womanish	Manly, hardy
3.	Effigy	Figure, image, statue	Real, original
4.	Elegance	Gracefulness, beauty	Ugliness, coarseness
5.	Elite	Superior, forward	Dregs, Backward
6.	Eloquent	Fluent, Communicative	Inarticulate
7.	Emit	Exhale, Eject, discharge	Inhale, swallow
8.	Emphatic	Forceful, Vigorous	Mile, feeble
9.	Enigmatic	Ambiguous, puzzled	Simple, plain, clear
10.	Exaggerate	Overstate, magnify	Disparage, belittle
11.	Exhibit	Show, display, demonstrate	Mask, hide
12.	Eventual	Ultimate, last	Prior, initial
13.	Eulogy	Adulation, Praise	Criticism
14.	Enrage	Infuriate, anger	Soothe, calm
15.	Enthrall	Subdue, enslave	Emancipate, free
16.	Evasive	Equivocation, cagey	Helpful, cooperative
17.	Entice	Seduce, Tempt, Wheedle, coax	Deter, repulse
18.	Extol	Commend, applaud	Criticize, decry
19.	Extrovert	Sociable, affable	Introvert, coy
'F'			
1.	Fallacious	Wrong, deceptive, erroneous	True, correct
2.	Famished	Hungry, starved	Nourished, Healthy
3.	Fatuous	Stupid, silly	Wise, rational
4.	Fugitive	Escaping, fleeing	Captive, Captured
5.	Frolic	Play, fun, gambol	Mope, brood
6.	Fragile	Weak, brittle, feeble	Strong, sturdy
7.	Foment	Incite, abet	Prevent, check
8.	Flimsy	Slight, thin	Thick, strong
9.	Flinch	Comer, wince, recoil	Endure, bear
10.	Fetid	Stinking, foul	Fresh, good
11.	Fidelity	Loyalty, faithfulness, devotion	Infidelity, cheat
12.	Fecund	Fertile, productive	Infertile, Sterile
13.	Felicity	Bliss, happiness, gaiety	Sorrow, sadness
'G'			
1.	Grave	Sober, serious	Frivolous
2.	Gimcrack	Shoddy, cheap, mediocre	Costly, Excellent
3.	Genial	Cordial, pleasant, friendly	Unfriendly
4.	Gaudy	Flaunting, Showy	Simple, quiet

5.	Garrulous	Loquacious, talkative, verbose	Taciturn, reticent
6.	Grumpy	Sullen, surly	Affable, friendly
7.	Grotesque	Ugly, bizarre	Attractive, charming
8.	Gruesome	Repulsive, awful	Attractive, charming
9.	Gullible	Naïve, credulous	Wise, thoughtful
'H'			
1.	Humility	Modesty, Gentleness	Haughtiness, Conceit
2.	Huddle	Cluster, crowd	Disperse, diffuse
3.	Hegemony	Predominance, control, rule	Subjugation, suppression
4.	Hedge	Evade, circumrate	Confront, face
5.	Heedless	Inattentive, careless	Careful, regardful
6.	Hazy	Foggy, obscure	Clear, transparent
7.	Handy	Easy, comfortable, convenient	Clumsy, useless
8.	Hallucination	Delusion, illusion	Reality, truth
9.	Hidebound	Bigoted, mean, narrow-minded	Broad- minded
10.	Hostile	Unfriendly, adverse	Friendly, favourable
'I'			
1.	Irked	Annoyed, peeved	Pleased, cool
2.	Irreverence	Impiety, Profanity	Respect, Reverence
3.	Intricate	Complex, labyrinth	Distangled, simple
4.	Inordinate	Excessive, undue	Moderate, reasonable
5.	Insane	Mad, lunatic	Sane, sensible
6.	Insidious	Sinister, Subtle	Evident, blatant
7.	Inspid	Dull, tedious	Interesting
8.	Insurgent	Mutineer, Rebel	Obedient, follower
9.	Intimidate	Threaten, scare	Reassure
10.	Incongruous	Absurd, unfit	Consistent, apt
11.	Indolent	Lazy, lethargic	Diligent, Industrious
12.	Indigenous	Native, local	Foreign, imported
13.	Indict	Charge, accure	Acquit, absolve
14.	Inhumane	Cruel, brutal	Kind, merciful
15.	Inception	Commencement, Start, birth	End, completion
16.	Impromptu	Off-hand, extempore	Prepared, practiced
17.	Inapt	Unsuitable, unfit	Suitable, apt
18.	Implore	Beg, plead	Threaten
19.	Impel	Force, drive, push	Persuade
20.	Imbecile	Fool, idiot, stupid	Sage, shrewd
'J'			
1.	Juggle	Conjure, shuffle, manipulate	Guide, clear
2.	Jolly	Cheerful, joyful	Sad, sorrowful
3.	Jettison	Discard, abandon	Hold, catch

4.	Justify	Vindicate, approve	Censure, refute
'L'			
1.	Lush	Luxuriant, juicy	Dry, wilted
2.	Ludicrous	Absurd, ridiculous	Sensible, reasonable
3.	Lucidity	Clarity, perpetuity	Obscurity, Vagueness
4.	Laconic	Brief, short, concise	Long, extensive
5.	Lassitude	Weariness, lethargy	Activity, nimbleness
6.	Lavish	Extravagant, prodigal	Economical, stingy
7.	Lethal	Deadly, fatal	Harmless, safe
8.	Livid	Angry, enraged	Calm, poised
9.	Lucrative	Gainful, printable	Unprofitable, worthless
10.	Longing	Desire, yearning	Aversion, despite
'M'			
1.	Myriad	Countless, numerous	Limited, few
2.	Mutilate	Maim, cripple	Mend, repair
3.	Modicum	Bit, Little	Whole, complete
4.	Momentous	Serious, important	Trivial
5.	Morose	Sullen, surly	Genial, pleasant
6.	Motley	Diversed, heterogeneous	Uniform, homogeneous
7.	Mirth	Hilarity, fun	Gloom, sadness
8.	Methodical	Systematic, logical	Disorderly
9.	Meteoric	Phenomenal, quick	Slow, gradual
10.	Maudlin	Drunken	Sober, undernourished
11.	Mellifluous	Sweet, mellow	Noisy, discordant
12.	Macabre	Horrific, grisly	Pleasant, graceful
13.	Matron	Mother, dame, woman	Miss, girl
'N'			
1.	Novice	Tyro, Beginner	Master, expert
2.	Nettle	Vex, tease, annoy	Soothe, comfort
3.	Niggardly	Miserly, stingy	Generous, benevolent
4.	Negate	Nullify, invalidate	Validate, Authorize
5.	Naive	Artless, immature	Experienced, sophisticated
6.	Nasty	Spiteful, mean	Benevolent, good
7.	Nebulous	Obscure, hazy	Clear, distinct
'O'			
1.	Ornate	Decorated, garnished	Plain, simple
2.	Opulent	Rich, wealthy	Poor, Destitute
3.	Omit	Exclude, skip	Include, consider
4.	Odious	Horrible, noxious	Pleasant
5.	Occult	Supernatural, Paranormal	Normal, simple
6.	Obstinate	Stubborn, persistent	Docile, meek

7.	Oblivious	Forgetful, mindless	Mindful, careful
8.	Obnoxious	Loathsome, horrible	Good, advantageous
9.	Obscene	Indecent, lewd	Decent, modest
10.	Obsession	Mania, passion	Detachment, aversion
'P'			
1.	Putrid	Foul, rotten	Fresh, fragrant
2.	Puckish	Mischievous, naughty, wicked	Gentle, complaint
3.	Protean	Changeable, variable	Constant, invariable
4.	Propitious	Favorable, encouraging	Unfavourable, discouraging
5.	Proffer	Tender, offer	Withdraw, snatch
6.	Pristine	Original, unspoiled	Deformed, distorted
7.	Profane	Sacrilege, blasphemy	Holy, sacred
8.	Penury	Poverty, destitute	Richness, wealth
9.	Palpable	Obvious, clear	Vague, feeble
10.	Paucity	Lack, scarcity	Profuseness, abundance
'Q'			
1.	Quixotic	Fanciful, imaginary	Practical
2.	Queer	Abnormal, aberrant	Ordinary, common
3.	Quaint	Strange, unique	Ordinary
4.	Quell	Suppress, crush	Embolden, encourage
5.	Qualm	Uneasiness, scruple	Ease, comfort
6.	Quench	Extinguish, satiate, slake	Intensify
'R'			
1.	Rue	Lament, regret	Rejoice, enjoy
2.	Ruse	Dodge, trick, con	Innocence
3.	Rickety	Weak, Shaky	Firm, strong
4.	Revoke	Abolish, quash, annul	Confirm, validate
5.	Retard	Slow down, hinder	Accelerate
6.	Reticent	Taciturn, silent	Talkative, outspoken
7.	Renounce	Abandon, relinquish	Retain, keep
8.	Rectify	Correct, cure	Mistake, error
9.	Rebuke	Chide, reprimand	Applaud, praise
10.	Radiant	Bright, Luminous	Dull, dim
11.	Rational	Judicious, wise	Insane, unwise
12.	Ravage	Destroy, rain, plunder	Preserve, conserve
'S'			
1.	Swanky	Classy, ritzy	Substandard
2.	Surmount	Overcome, subdue	Succumb, fail
3.	Sullen	Surly, morose	Cheerful, lively
4.	Sublime	Pine, exalted	bad

5.	Succinct	Concise, laconic	Prolix, verbose
6.	Superstitious	Irrational, illogical	Logical, rational
7.	Stiff	Firm, inflexible	Flexible
8.	Stingy	Niggardly, miserly	Generous
9.	Sprout	Grow, develop	Wither, droop
10.	Spite	Hatred, malevolence	Love, friendliness
11.	Spinster	Unmarried, single	Married
12.	Slander	Defame, malign	Praise
13.	Serene	Tranquil, calm	Disturbed

'T'

1.	Temporal	Earthly, mundane	Spiritual, Divine
2.	Timorous, timid	Timid, diffident	Bold, dauntless
3.	Tenuous	Weak, feeble	Strong, firm
4.	Torpid	Dull, lethargic	Active, energetic
5.	Trivial	Petty, insignificant	Important
6.	Turbulence	Chaos, disturbance	Quiet, tranquil
7.	Transitory	Temporary	Permanent, lasting
8.	Tendency	Bent, bias	Aversion, apathy
9.	Terse	Brief, Laconic	Prolix, verbose

'U'

1.	Unwieldy	Ponderous, cumbersome	Handy, comfortable
2.	Unerring	Accurate, exact	Faulty, defective
3.	Undertake	Start, commence	End, stop
4.	Unadorned	Plain, natural	Decorated, adorned

'V'

1.	Vulgar	Coarse, offensive	Decent
2.	Verse	Vigor, enthusiasm	Impotency, weakness
3.	Veracity	Truth, honesty	Falsehood
4.	Vacillation	Fluctuation, Wavering	Steadiness, adherence
5.	Valiant	Bold, daring, dauntless	Coward, timid
6.	Vanity	Pride, egotism	Modesty, humility

'W'

1.	Warily	Carefully	Carelessly
2.	Wail	Moan, howl, yowl	Rejoice, enjoy
3.	Weird	Strange, bizarre	Normal, common
4.	Wearisome	Irksome, boring, uninteresting	Interesting, appealing
5.	Witty	Amusing, jocular	Dull, distressing
6.	Wither	Droop, fade	Bloom, blossom
7.	Winding	Curved, twisting	Straight

'Y'			
1.	Yowl	Howl, Moan	Rejoice, happy
2.	Yesman	Sycophant, flatterer	Frank, candid
3.	Yield	Surrender, give in	Oppose, fight
4.	Yell	Shut, scream	Whisper, murmur
5.	Yearning	Longing, desire	Dislike, detestation
'Z'			
1.	Zing	Energy, vitality	Lethargy
2.	Zenith	Peak, pinnacle	Nadir, bottom
3.	Zest, Zealous	Passionate, fervent	Indifference, apathetic
4.	Zealot	Fanatic, devotee	Opponent, adversary

Exercise -1

Direction: Choose the word, which is most opposite in meaning to the given word.

- CONCILIATION
 - Dispute
 - Irritation
 - Separation
 - Confrontation
- MYTH
 - Truth
 - Irritation
 - Separation
 - Confrontation
- RELUCTANTLY
 - Pleasingly
 - Willingly
 - Satisfactorily
 - Happily
- MUTILATE
 - Instruct
 - Induct
 - Conduct
 - Mend
- LAMENT
 - Rejoice
 - Rejuvenate
 - Complain
 - Cry
- PAROCHIAL
 - Narrow
 - International
 - Global
 - Worldwide
- FALLIBLE
 - Unerring
 - Reliable
 - Falsehood
 - Trustful
- IMPERTINENT
 - Arrogance
 - Appropriate
 - Respectful
 - Modest
- ROUGH
 - Refined
 - Charming
 - Smooth
 - Polite
- RATIFICATION
 - Disapproval
 - Disagreeable
 - Denial
 - Disturbing
- ANIMOSITY
 - Love
 - Lust
 - Luck
 - Loss
- ALTERCATION
 - Explanation
 - Challenge
 - Compromise
 - Opposition
- COAX
 - Dull
 - Dissuade
 - Active
 - Speed
- ERUDITE
 - Educated
 - Unscholarly
 - Scholarly
 - Possessive
- AFFLUENT
 - High
 - Poor
 - Rate
 - Fluent

- | | | | | |
|------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 16. OMIT | (a) Exclude | (b) Include | (c) Undertake | (d) Add |
| 17. INTEGRATION | (a) Unity | (b) Syntaxes | (c) Inkling | (d) Fragmentation |
| 18. MINIATURE | (a) Large | (b) Small | (c) Heavy | (d) Least |
| 19. EXHAUSTS | (a) Tires | (b) Empties | (c) Invigorates | (d) Drains |
| 20. DISTANT | (a) Far | (b) Close | (c) Imminent | (d) Alone |
| 21. TRANSPARENT | (a) Clear | (b) Ambiguity | (c) Opaque | (d) Crystal |
| 22. ENCOUNTERED | (a) Avoided | (b) Enriched | (c) Faced | (d) Overcome |
| 23. HANDY | (a) Cumbersome | (b) Handful | (c) Unwieldy | (d) Heavy |
| 24. ELEGANCE | (a) Pride | (b) Beauty | (c) Coarseness | (d) Vulgarity |
| 25. CAPRICIOUS | (a) Firm | (b) Fickle | (c) Indefinite | (d) Defiant |
| 26. SURVIVAL | (a) Evolution | (b) Development | (c) Creation | (d) Extinction |
| 27. INSERT | (a) Depict | (b) Extract | (c) Defame | (d) Enhance |
| 28. INCONGRUOUS | (a) Conflicting | (b) Contradicting | (c) Ill-matched | (d) Harmonious |
| 29. DEMENTED | (a) Sensible | (b) Sensitive | (c) Sensual | (d) Sensuous |
| 30. IMPROMPTU | (a) Prompt | (b) Forced | (c) Premeditated | (d) Inordinate |
| 31. HOSTILE | (a) Friendly | (b) Sudden | (c) Costly | (d) Unfair |
| 32. BREADTH | (a) Friendly | (b) Narrowness | (c) Lightness | (d) Thickness |
| 33. TIMOROUS | (a) Trembling | (b) Cowardly | (c) Bright | (d) Bold |
| 34. SUBLIME | (a) Amusing | (b) Ludicrous | (c) Hilarious | (d) Bold |
| 35. ECCENTRICITY | (a) Normalcy | (b) Similarity | (c) Equality | (d) Clarity |
| 36. LIBERAL | (a) Unreliable | (b) Strong | (c) Intolerant | (d) Responsible |
| 37. TACIT | (a) Trivial | (b) Spoken | (c) Lengthy | (d) Neutral |
| 38. PUNITIVE | (a) Inconsistent | (b) Rewarding | (c) Cognisable | (d) Punctual |
| 39. RECOLLECT | (a) Forget | (b) Memory | (c) Distribute | (d) Assemble |

- | | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|-----------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 40. SALUBRIOUS | (a) Essential | (b) Tarnished | (c) Benign | (d) Unhealthy |
| 41. GERMANE | (a) Impossible | (b) Illogical | (c) Irrelevant | (d) Irresponsible |
| 42. STRIDENT | (a) Melodious | (b) Stable | (c) Musical | (d) Pleasant |
| 43. PUISSANT | (a) Weak | (b) Intelligent | (c) Careful | (d) Indifferent |
| 44. CHURLISH | (a) Coarse | (b) Modest | (c) Niggardly | (d) Courteous |
| 45. EUPHONIOUS | (a) Strident | (b) Lethargic | (c) Distasteful | (d) Significant |
| 46. NOISOME | (a) Dirty | (b) Sleepy | (c) Clean | (d) Fragrant |
| 47. LABYRINTHINE | (a) Obscure | (b) Clear | (c) Straight | (d) Opaque |
| 48. GAUDY | (a) August | (b) Puerile | (c) Drab | (d) Garish |
| 49. CONVOLUTED | (a) Simple | (b) Utilitarian | (c) Serpentine | (d) Laborious |
| 50. LAGGARD | (a) Frantic | (b) Dilatory | (c) Presumptuous | (d) Expeditious |

Exercise-2

Direction: Out of the four alternatives, choose the word, which is most similar in meaning to the given word.

- | | | | | |
|----------------|------------------|--------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. GRANDEUR | (a) Magnificence | (b) Admiration | (c) Happiness | (d) Awe |
| 2. INCEPTION | (a) Initiative | (b) Beginning | (c) Initial | (d) Origin |
| 3. COLOSSAL | (a) Famous | (b) Vigorous | (c) Energetic | (d) Enormous |
| 4. PARADOX | (a) Paradise | (b) Question | (c) Puzzle | (d) Challenge |
| 5. PROLIFERATE | (a) Pro-literate | (b) Prohibit | (c) Stipulate | (d) Reproduce |
| 6. BEAUTIFUL | (a) Handsome | (b) Alluring | (c) Appealing | (d) Attractive |
| 7. MOMENTOUS | (a) Important | (b) Temporary | (c) Fleeting | (d) Monumental |
| 8. INFATUATION | (a) Emotion | (b) Passion | (c) Imagination | (d) Compassion |
| 9. CONSIGNEE | (a) Delegate | (b) Representative | (c) Nominee | (d) Messenger |
| 10. TRAMP | (a) Wanderer | (b) Cheat | (c) Traveller | (d) Pilgrim |
| 11. CENSURE | (a) Criticise | (b) Appreciate | (c) Blame | (d) Abuse |

12. DILIGENT (a) Industrious	(b) Indifferent	(c) Intelligent	(d) Energetic
13. CONTEMPLATION (a) Consideration	(b) Meditation	(c) Deliberation	(d) Speculation
14. ADULATION (a) Duration	(b) Argument	(c) Flattery	(d) Institution
15. QUIVER (a) Quarrel	(b) Quicken	(c) Waver	(d) Tremble
16. IRREVERENCE (a) Disrespect	(b) Cruelty	(c) Unkindness	(d) Invalidity
17. AMICABLE (a) Poisonous	(b) Friendly	(c) Satisfying	(d) Heartening
18. PRUDENT (a) Skilled	(b) Experienced	(c) Cautious	(d) Criminal
19. PANACEA (a) Flatter	(b) Praise	(c) Inactivity	(d) Cure-all
20. BENEVOLENCE (a) Ill will	(b) Morbidity	(c) Kindness	(d) Vision
21. VINDICATE (a) Open	(b) Ventilate	(c) Justify	(d) Recommend
22. OCCULT (a) Religious	(b) Unnatural	(c) Supernatural	(d) Strong
23. MENACE (a) Request	(b) Prayer	(c) Threat	(d) Curse
24. DELINEATE (a) Expand	(b) Portray	(c) Explain	(d) Argue
25. ABROGATE (a) Elope	(b) Gatecrash	(c) Abolish	(d) Destroy
26. ELUDE (a) Allure	(b) Leave	(c) Deceive	(d) Escape
27. PREMONITION (a) Insight	(b) Uncertainty	(c) Forewarning	(d) Scope
28. DEROGATORY (a) Injurious	(b) Shattering	(c) Destructive	(d) Disparaging
29. NOMADIC (a) Fighting	(b) Rare	(c) Strange	(d) Wandering
30. RESTIVE (a) Rested	(b) Restless	(c) Limited	(d) Limitless
31. ERRONEOUSLY (a) Previously	(b) Effectively	(c) Wrongly	(d) Evidently
32. ESTRANGED (a) Jealous	(b) Angry	(c) Separated	(d) Suspicious
33. CAPITULATE (a) Repeat	(b) Execute	(c) Summarize	(d) Surrender
34. PROPITIATE (a) Conform	(b) Appease	(c) Influence	(d) Approach
35. CEREMONIOUS (a) Religious	(b) Formal	(c) Official	(d) Approach

36. CONSEQUENCE
(a) Indifference (b) Affect (c) Serial (d) Outcome
37. ABATE
(a) Tighten (b) Revive (c) Abandon (d) Diminish
38. RUMINATE
(a) Anticipate (b) Concentrate (c) Ponder (d) Abscond
39. VEHEMENTLY
(a) Openly (b) Widely (c) Abruptly (d) Forcefully
40. PROFANE
(a) Respectful (b) Arrogant (c) Impious (d) Intelligent
41. PARITY
(a) Vicinity (b) Similarity (c) Equivocal (d) Original
42. INACCESSIBLE
(a) Irreparable (b) Vulnerable (c) Uncountable (d) Unapproachable
43. VINDICTIVE
(a) Apologetic (b) Uncompromising (c) Revengeful (d) Fearful
44. RECUPERATE
(a) Resolve (b) Avenge (c) Cooperate (d) Recover
45. ENIGMATIC
(a) Short-sighted (b) Learned (c) Puzzling (d) Displeased
46. INTERIM
(a) Interval (b) Temporary (c) Timely (d) Internal
47. SOPORIFIC
(a) Soothing (b) Lethargic (c) Merry (d) Impressive
48. BUCOLIC
(a) Healthy (b) Rustic (c) Intoxicated (d) Sick
49. LACHRYMOSE
(a) Impious (b) Mournful (c) Unimpressive (d) Moist
50. FESTAL
(a) Merry (b) Serious (c) Noisy (d) Sad

Solutions -1

1.	d	2.	a	3.	b	4.	d	5.	a	6.	c	7.	a	8.	d	9.	c	10.	a
11.	a	12.	c	13.	b	14.	b	15.	b	16.	b	17.	d	18.	a	19.	c	20.	c
21.	c	22.	a	23.	c	24.	d	25.	a	26.	d	27.	b	28.	d	29.	a	30.	c
31.	a	32.	b	33.	d	34.	b	35.	a	36.	c	37.	b	38.	b	39.	a	40.	d
41.	c	42.	d	43.	a	44.	d	45.	a	46.	d	47.	c	48.	c	49.	a	50.	d

Solutions -2

1.	a	2.	b	3.	d	4.	c	5.	d	6.	a	7.	a	8.	b	9.	c	10.	a
11.	a	12.	a	13.	b	14.	c	15.	d	16.	a	17.	b	18.	c	19.	d	20.	c
21.	c	22.	b	23.	c	24.	b	25.	c	26.	d	27.	c	28.	d	29.	d	30.	b
31.	c	32.	c	33.	d	34.	b	35.	b	36.	d	37.	d	38.	c	39.	d	40.	c
41.	b	42.	d	43.	c	44.	d	45.	c	46.	a	47.	b	48.	b	49.	b	50.	a

Phrasal Verbs

Dear Students, Phrasal verb is an idiomatic phrase consisting of a verb and another element, typically either an adverb, as in break down, or a preposition, for example see to, or a combination of both, such as look down on.

Verb + Preposition (or adverb) = Phrasal Verb

When we make new word by combining verb and preposition (verb + preposition), the meaning of this newly formed word is different from the individual words. The knowledge of phrasal verbs is very important to have a good command of English.

We have covered some phrasal verbs, which are very important for Exams.

Phrasal Verbs

1.	Add up	To seem Truth/reasonable
2.	Answer for	To be answerable for
3.	Attend on	To serve
4.	Back up	To support
5.	Bear out	To prove/To confirm the truth
6.	Become of	To happen
7.	Break down	To start weeping, To stop functioning
8.	Bring up	To raise
9.	Break into	To enter forcefully
10.	Break in on	To interrupt
11.	Bank upon	To rely on
12.	Break out	To start suddenly (disease, war etc.)
13.	Clear of	To free from blame
14.	Call for	To demand (answer, explanation)
15.	Carry off	To succeed in a difficult task
16.	Catch on	To be popular
17.	Carry out	To execute
18.	Call off an event	To cancel, To abandon
19.	Carry away	To get excited
20.	Clear up	To explain
21.	Clear away	To remove
22.	Come across	To meet suddenly
23.	Clear out	To make something clean
24.	Do for	To ruin or destroy
25.	Dragon	To last longer than expected
26.	Dawn on	To understand
27.	Drop by/in	To visit without information
28.	Dwell on	To speak about something
29.	Eat into	To weaken
30.	Fall out (with)	To quarrel with
31.	Fall apart	To break into pieces

32.	Fall for	To fall in love with
33.	Fish for	Try to win favour
34.	Figure out	To understand
35.	Get off	To take leave with permission
36.	Get away	To have a vacation
37.	Get on	To make progress
38.	Get round (someone)	To persuade someone to do something
39.	Get rid of	To dispose of, to leave
40.	Gain on	To be close in competition
41.	Get along (with)	To have friendly relationship
42.	Give in	To yield/To surrender
43.	Give up	To stop doing some
44.	Go for	To attack
45.	Go by	To work accordingly
46.	Go through	To read, to pass through a time
47.	Go down in history	To get admitted in history
48.	Hold with	To agree/to approve
49.	Hold down	To control by force
50.	Hold back	To control expression, Not to reveal
51.	Let off	Not to punish someone
52.	Iron out	To resolve a problem mutually
53.	Kick against	To revolt
54.	Keep from	To abstain from
55.	Lap up	To eat or drink something completely
56.	Look to	To expect
57.	Look into	To investigate
58.	Look forward to	To wait eagerly
59.	Look after	To care of something
60.	Look for	Try to find
61.	Look forward to	To anticipate pleasantly
62.	Look down on	To feel that someone is less important
63.	Look into	To investigate
64.	Make do with	To improve
65.	Make for	To manage
66.	Make of	To understand
67.	Make off with	To run away with
68.	Occur to	To understand
69.	Part with	To leave/renounce
70.	Play at	To do without interest
71.	Pull off	To succeed in something difficult
72.	Pull up	To criticize
73.	Put off	To postpone, to delay

74.	Put down	To suppress by force
75.	Put down to	To explain the cause
76.	Put aside	To save, to ignore
77.	Put across	To express one's idea successfully
78.	Put out	To extinguish
79.	Put up with	To tolerate, To bear
80.	Rail at/against	To criticize
81.	Run into	To face a problem
82.	Run down	To decline
83.	Run down	To criticize, to crush
84.	Resolve into	To divide
85.	Set up	To establish
86.	See through	To realize, the truth
87.	See to	To deal with
88.	Speak out	To express the opinion publicly
89.	Speak of	To be the evidence
90.	Sort out	To find a solution
91.	Set upon	To attack suddenly
92.	Smile at	To laugh (someone)
93.	Smile on	To be favorable to someone or something
94.	Sit around/about	To spend time leisurely
95.	Stand by	To be ready, to keep a promise
96.	Stand better	To be comparatively good
97.	Stand up to	To defend or challenge
98.	Step down	To resign
99.	Stand up	To be valid
100.	Step up	To increase
101.	Strike down	To kill or make seriously ill
102.	Take over, Take on	To take responsibility
103.	Take after	To resemble
104.	Take down	To write
105.	Work up	To excite
106.	Wipe out	To remove completely
107.	While away	To spend time leisurely
108.	Wear off	To lose effect
109.	Wait on	To serve
110.	Turn up	To appear
111.	Turn down	To refuse or reject
112.	Touch upon	To explain
113.	Take up	To start
114.	Tone down	To lessen the intensity

Chapter 6

Figure of Speech

WHAT ARE THE FIGURES OF SPEECH? A figure of speech is a deviation from the ordinary use of words in order to increase their effectiveness. Basically, it is a figurative language that may consist of a single word or phrase. It may be a simile, a metaphor or personification to convey the meaning other than its literal meaning.

TYPES OF FIGURES OF SPEECH

The figures of speech list is over a hundred but some commonly used types are given along with examples.

1. SIMILE

In simile two unlike things are explicitly compared. For example, "She is like a fairy". A simile is introduced by words such as like, so, as etc.

2. METAPHOR

It is an informal or implied simile in which words like, as, so are omitted. For example, "He is like a lion" (Simile) and "He is a lion (metaphor)". In the following examples, metaphors are underlined.

- She is a star of our family.
- The childhood of the world; the anger of the tempest; the deceitfulness of the riches: wine is a mocker.
- She is now in the sunset of her days.

3. PERSONIFICATION

Personification is an attribution of personal nature, intelligence or character to inanimate objects or abstract notions. For example, in some phrases we use, the furious storm, the thirsty ground, and the pitiless cold. Some other examples are:

- Little sorrows sit and weep. (Boccaccio)
- The dish ran away with the spoon. (Blake)

4. METONYMY

Metonymy is meant for a change of name. It is a substitute of the thing names for the thing meant. Following examples will clarify the concept.

- The pen is mightier than the sword.
- From the cradle to the grave. = from childhood to death.
- I have never read Milton. = the works of Milton.

5. APOSTROPHE

It is a direct address to some inanimate thing or some abstract idea as if it were living person or some absent person as if it were present. Example, "Boy's mother loved him very much."

6. HYPERBOLE

Hyperbole is a statement made emphatic by overstatement. For example, "Virtues as the sands of the shore."

7. SYNECDOCHE

Synecdoche is the understanding of one thing by means of another. Here, a part is used to designate the whole or the whole to designate a part. For example, "I have the Viceroy, love the man.", and "All hands (crew) at work."

8. TRANSFERRED EPITHETS

In transferred epithets, the qualifying objective is transferred from a person to a thing as in phrases. For example, "sleepless night", "sunburn mirth", and "melodious plain".

9. EUPHEMISM

By using the euphemism, we speak in agreeable and favorable terms of some person, object or event which is ordinarily considered unpleasant and disagreeable. For example,

- He is telling us a fairy tale. (a lie)
- He has fallen asleep. (he is dead)

10. IRONY OR SARCASM

In this mode of speech, the real meanings of the words used are different from the intended meanings. For example, the child of cobbler has no shoe.

11. PUN

This consists of a play on the various meanings of a word. Its effect is often ludicrous. For example,

- Is life worth living? It depends upon the liver.
- Obviously, the constitution is against prostitution and congress is against progress. (con means against and pro means for)

12. EPIGRAM

It is a brief pointed saying. It couples words which apparently contradict each other. The language of the epigram is remarkable for its brevity. Examples are as under:

- The child is the father of the man. (Wordsworth)
- Fools rush in where angels fear to tread.
- The art lies in concealing art.
- Silence is sometimes more eloquent than words.
- Conspicuous by its absence.

@CUET_2024_BOOKS

13. ANTITHESIS

In antithesis, a striking opposition or contrast of words is made in the same sentence in order to secure emphasis. For example,

- To err is human, to forgive divine.
- Give every man thy ear, but few thy voice.

14. OXYMORON

It is a figure of speech which combines two seemingly contradictory or incongruous words for sharp emphasis or effect. For example,

- "darkness visible" (Milton);
- "make haste slowly" (Suetonius)
- "loving hate" (Romeo and Juliet)

15. LITOTES

It is the opposite of hyperbole. Here an affirmative is conveyed by negation of the opposite. For example,

- He is no dullard.
- I am not a little
- He is not a bad sort.

16. INTERROGATION

This is a rhetorical mode of affirming or denying something more strongly than could be done in ordinary language. Examples,

- Who is here so base that would be a bondman?
- Who is here so rude that would not be a Roman?

- Who is here so vile that will not love his country? (Shakespeare)

17. EXCLAMATION

It is used for strong expression of feelings. For examples, O lift me as a wave, a leaf, a cloud I fall upon the thorn life; I bleed!

18. CLIMAX

It is an arrangement of a series of ideas in the order of increasing importance. For example, "What a piece of work man! How noble in reason, how infinite in faculties! In action, how like an angel!"

19. ANTICLIMAX OR BATHOS

This is the opposite to climax and signifies a ludicrous descent from the higher to the lower.

- A man so various, that he seemed to be. Not one, but all mankind's epitome; who in the course of one revolving moon; was lawyer, statesman, fiddler, and buffoon.

20. ALLITERATION

The repetition of the same letter or syllable at the beginning of two or more words is called alliteration. For example,

- By apt Alliteration's artful a
- Glittering through the gloomy g
- The furrow follows f

21. ONOMATOPOEIA

The formation of a word whose sound is made to suggest or echo the sense as in cuckoo, bang, growl, hiss.

- The moan of doves in immemorial elms and murmur of innumerable bees.
- Rend with the tremendous sound your ears asunder with guns, drum, trumpet, blunderbuss, and thunder.

22. CIRCUMLOCUTION

This consists of expressing some fact or idea in a roundabout way, instead of stating it at once. For example,

- The viewless couriers of the air. =(the wind)
- That statement of his was purely an effort of imagination. = (a fiction)

23. TAUTOLOGY OR PLEONASM

Tautology is meant for repeating the same fact or idea in different words. For example, "It is the privilege and birthright of every man to express his ideas without any fear."

Exercise

Direction for the questions: Identify the figure of speech used in the following sentences.

1. The leader made a fiery speech.
2. At last, they agreed to disagree.
3. Even the sky shed tears when Gandhi died.
4. He is the vulture of the state.
5. A cry that would raise the dead from the grave.
6. Idleness is the nursery of evil thoughts.
7. Words are easy like the wind.
8. Infancy is the beginning of life as dawn is the beginning of the day.
9. The curfew tolls the knell of parting day.
10. His rash policy let lose the dogs of war.

- A lie has no legs.
Thus Nature spake - the work was done - How soon my Lucy's race was run!
O, Captain! My captain! Our fearful trip is done.
And beauty born of murmuring sound. Shall pass into her face.
Her mother, too, upon this occasion felt pleasing distress.
Whose armor is his honest thought?
Whose conscience is his strong retreat?
The wind lies in the arms of the dawn.
Our echoes roll from soul to soul.
Death in his palace holds his court-His messengers move to and fro.
Peace hath her victories-No less renowned the war.
Cowardly brave-Yes that describes him, Because he fights only when he cannot run away.
Wild West wind, thou breath of autumn's being.
Milton, thou shouldst be living at this hour.
They build the nation's pillars deep - And lift them to the sky.
Our sweetest songs are those that tell of saddest thoughts.
As shines the moon in clouded skies. She in her poor attire was seen.
The city's voice itself is soft like solitude's.
Hope is the poor man's bread.
We are the voices of the wandering wind.
Death lays his icy hands on kings.
The daisy smiled at the morning sun.
O, Julius Caesar! Thou art mighty yet.
O world! Oh, Life! O Time! On Whose last steps I climb.
Why, man, if the river were dry I am able to fill it with tears.
James, I was the wisest fool.
But patient, to prevent That murmur, soon replies
I hear lake water lapping with low sounds by the shore.
So like a shattered column lay the king?
I wandered lonely as a cloud.
The murmurous haunt of flies on summer eves.
It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven.
We are all like swimmers on the sea of life.
I see a lily on thy brow.
He is the pillar of the state.
Let not ambition mock their useful toil.
It is the tree's lament, an eerie speech, That haply to the unknown land may reach.
O mighty Caesar! Dost thou lie so low?
All the perfumes of Arabia will not sweeten this little hand.
And out of joy, His heart jumped miles high.
The camel is the ship of the desert.
Authority forgets a dying king.
Experience is the best teacher.
He is regularly irregular.
I heard the water lapping on the crag.
She is as firm as a rock.
Errors, like straws, upon the surface flow.
Life is but a walking shadow.
He is the pillar of the administration.
Love is blind.
Truth sits upon the lips of dying men.
O sweet content! Where is thy mild abode?

63. My cheeks grow cold and hear the sea.
64. O Grave! Where is thy victory?
65. Life! I know not what thou art,
66. They were swifter than eagles and stronger than lions.
67. He is an innocent criminal.
68. She wept oceans of tears.
69. Fair is foul and foul is fair.
70. A murmuring whisper through the nunnery ran.
71. Lightly, O lightly we glide and we sing. We bear her along like a pearl on a string.
72. She is as lovely as a rose.
73. Life is a dream.
74. He is now in the sunset of his days.
75. Opportunity knocks at the door but once.
76. Laughter holding both her sides.
77. Frailty, thy name is a woman!
78. Rend with the tremendous sound your ears asunder With gun, drum, trumpet, blunderbuss and thunder.
79. She shall be sportive as the fawn.
80. Like the sly snake they come, That sting unseen: like the striped murderer.
81. As many farewells as there be stars in heaven.
82. And having nothing he hath all.
83. This is an open secret.
84. The curfew tolls the knell of a parting day.
85. O my love is like a red, red rose.
86. How a little candle throws its beams! So shines a good deed is a naughty world.
87. Life is a tale told by an idiot.
88. Integrity is the backbone of character.
89. Peace hath her victories no less renowned than war.
90. The sea that bears her bosom to the moon.
91. There is a dagger in thy words.
92. Beaded bubbles winking at the brim.
93. Sunflowers nod in the hot fields and apple buds laughs into blossom.
94. O! Judgment! Thou art fled to brutish beasts.
95. O Solitude! Where are the charms, That sages have seen in the face?
96. Belinda smiled and all the world was gay.
97. Great lord of all things, yet a prey to all.
98. The more haste, the less speed.
99. The moan of doves in immemorial elms. And murmur of innumerable bees.
100. Or from star-like eyes doth seek Fuel to maintain his fires.
101. I could lie down like a tired child. And weep away the life of care.

Solutions

1. Metaphor
2. Oxymoron
3. Hyperbole
4. Metaphor
5. Hyperbole
6. Metaphor
7. Simile

63. My cheeks grow cold and hear the sea.
64. O Grave! Where is thy victory?
65. Life! I know not what thou art,
66. They were swifter than eagles and stronger than lions.
67. He is an innocent criminal.
68. She wept oceans of tears.
69. Fair is foul and foul is fair.
70. A murmuring whisper through the nunnery ran.
71. Lightly, O lightly we glide and we sing. We bear her along like a pearl on a string.
72. She is as lovely as a rose.
73. Life is a dream.
74. He is now in the sunset of his days.
75. Opportunity knocks at the door but once.
76. Laughter holding both her sides.
77. Frailty, thy name is a woman!
78. Rend with the tremendous sound your ears asunder With gun, drum, trumpet, blunderbuss and thunder.
79. She shall be sportive as the fawn.
80. Like the sly snake they come, That sting unseen: like the striped murderer.
81. As many farewells as there be stars in heaven.
82. And having nothing he hath all.
83. This is an open secret.
84. The curfew tolls the knell of a parting day.
85. O my love is like a red, red rose.
86. How a little candle throws its beams! So shines a good deed is a naughty world.
87. Life is a tale told by an idiot.
88. Integrity is the backbone of character.
89. Peace hath her victories no less renowned than war.
90. The sea that bears her bosom to the moon.
91. There is a dagger in thy words.
92. Beaded bubbles winking at the brim.
93. Sunflowers nod in the hot fields and apple buds laughs into blossom.
94. O! Judgment! Thou art fled to brutish beasts.
95. O Solitude! Where are the charms, That sages have seen in the face?
96. Belinda smiled and all the world was gay.
97. Great lord of all things, yet a prey to all.
98. The more haste, the less speed.
99. The moan of doves in immemorial elms. And murmur of innumerable bees.
100. Or from star-like eyes doth seek Fuel to maintain his fires.
101. I could lie down like a tired child. And weep away the life of care.

Solutions

1. Metaphor
2. Oxymoron
3. Hyperbole
4. Metaphor
5. Hyperbole
6. Metaphor
7. Simile

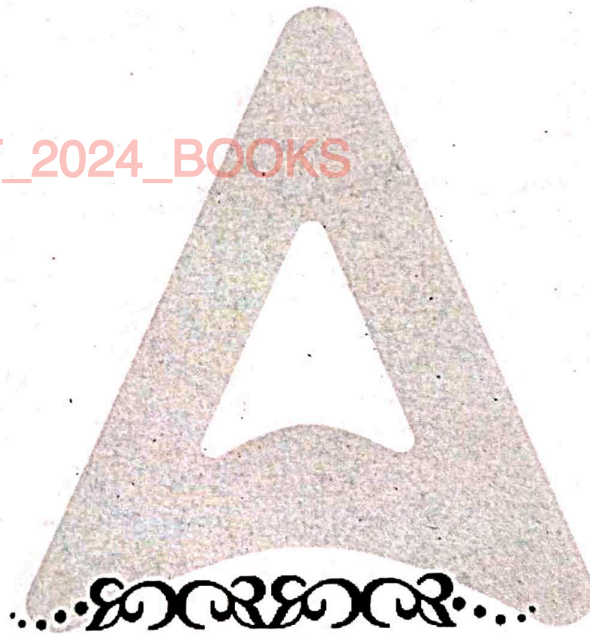
8. Simile
9. Onomatopoeia
10. Metaphor
11. Personification
12. Personification
13. Apostrophe
14. Onomatopoeia
15. Oxymoron
16. Metaphor
17. Metaphor
18. Personification
19. Onomatopoeia
20. Personification
21. Personification
22. Oxymoron
23. Personification
24. Apostrophe
25. Hyperbole
26. Oxymoron
27. Simile
28. Simile
29. Metaphor
30. Metaphor
31. Personification
32. Personification
33. Apostrophe
34. Apostrophe
35. Hyperbole
36. Oxymoron
37. Onomatopoeia
38. Onomatopoeia
39. Simile
40. Simile
41. Onomatopoeia
42. Simile
43. Simile
44. Metaphor
45. Metaphor
46. Personification
47. Personification
48. Apostrophe
49. Hyperbole
50. Hyperbole
51. Metaphor
52. Personification
53. Personification
54. Oxymoron
55. Onomatopoeia
56. Simile
57. Simile
58. Metaphor
59. Metaphor
60. Personification
61. Personification
62. Apostrophe
63. Hyperbole
64. Apostrophe



@CUET_2024_BOOKS

65. Apostrophe
66. Hyperbole
67. Oxymoron
68. Hyperbole
69. Oxymoron
70. Onomatopoeia
71. Simile
72. Simile
73. Metaphor
74. Metaphor
75. Personification
76. Personification
77. Apostrophe
78. Onomatopoeia
79. Simile
80. Simile
81. Hyperbole
82. Oxymoron
83. Oxymoron
84. Onomatopoeia
85. Simile
86. Simile
87. Metaphor
88. Metaphor
89. Personification
90. Personification
91. Metaphor
92. Personification
93. Personification
94. Apostrophe
95. Apostrophe
96. Hyperbole
97. Oxymoron
98. Oxymoron
99. Onomatopoeia
100. Simile
101. Simile

@CUET_2024_BOOKS



Analogy

Common Relationships

One of the advantages of questions on analogies is that the logical relationships between words are all clear-cut, common sense relationships that can be easily deduced (given, of course, that you know the definitions of the words contained in the question.) We now go ahead and look at some of the typical and common logical relationships that appear often in the analogy section of the Undergraduate Entrance Test and other multiple choice tests. Detailed examples are given for the important types of relationships, while others are mentioned in brief.

Type 1: Synonyms

Synonyms, as you are already aware, are words that have same or similar meanings. When you recognise the capitalised pair as a pair of synonyms, you will then look for a pair of words that also has the same or similar meanings. For example, polite: courteous are synonyms and so are engagement: betrothal.

EXTEMPORANEOUS : IMPROMPTU

- (a) reputable : elusive
- (b) antiquated : modern
- (c) depressed : ecstatic
- (d) morose : saturnine

Extemporaneous and impromptu are synonyms. Option A does not have any obvious relationship between its two words while options B and C are both in the form of antonyms. Option D has to be the answer since morose describes someone who is gloomy or melancholy, and saturnine is synonymous with morose.

Type 2: Antonyms

Antonyms, as we have already seen earlier in the chapter dedicated to the same, are words that have opposite meanings. In the context of an analogy question, if the words in the initial pair are antonyms, you are looking for an option that contains a pair of words that is opposite in meaning to each other. Consider the following example:

ZEALOUS : INDIFFERENT

- (a) diligent : hard working
- (b) perplexing : explicable
- (c) incorrigible : instantaneous
- (d) mysterious : exclusive

A zealous person is one who cares very strongly about something, while someone who is indifferent does not care about things. Option B contains an antonym since something that is perplexing is difficult to explain or inexplicable, while explicable describes something that can be explained. Thus, these two words are antonyms. The words in option A are synonyms while those in options C and D are irrelevant.

Type 3: Degree of Intensity

In this type of problem, the question contains a pair of words that is similar in meaning (synonyms), however the two words vary in their intensity as one is more intense than the other. For example, in the pair jog: sprint, both words describe running, but a jog is a very slow run, while a sprint is a full-speed, extremely fast run. A similar relationship exists between sip and gulp, eat and hog, fantastic, etc.

ENTHUSIASTIC : FANATICAL

- (a) frugal : miserly
- (b) faithful : kind
- (c) admonish : warn
- (d) virtuous : wholesome

Fanatical is an extreme form of being enthusiastic while miserly describes a person who is extremely frugal. Options C and D are synonyms; while the relationship between the words in option B is unclear.

Type 4: Part to Whole

In this type of analogy, the first word is part of the second word (or vice versa). For example, in the pair star : constellation, a group of stars makes up a constellation. Similarly, a toe is a part of a foot.

Consider the following example:

PARAGRAPH : ESSAY

- (a) scene : play
- (b) cast : actor
- (c) symphony : orchestra
- (d) dictator : oppressed

An essay (whole) is composed of a series of paragraphs (part). Likewise, a series of scenes (part) make up a dramatic play (whole). Option B is close but the relationship is in the reverse direction. The relationship between cast and actor is one of part to whole, but a cast is composed of actors (this is whole : part). Other word pairs in options choices C and D are not related by the part to whole structure.

Type 5: Actor to Action

The relationship used in this kind of problem is that of a person or object with the action they can perform. In most cases, this includes professions, and the jobs that people in those professions perform. For example, in the word pair teacher : educate, a teacher's job is to educate, while in the word pair tailor : sew, the tailor's job is to sew. Remember when working analogies of this type that you are looking for the word pair in which the action most explicitly describes the major activity of the actor. This point is amply illustrated through the example below:

ARBITRATOR : JUDGE

- (a) mechanic : repair
- (b) direction : orient
- (c) lawyer : legislate
- (d) musician : orchestra

An arbitrator judges or decides when there is a dispute while a mechanic works to repair things.

broken. If we consider option C, although you could envision circumstances in which a lawyer might work to legislate, but this would not be the primary action of a lawyer.

Type 6: Cause and Effect

In this type of problems, one of the words describes a condition or action (which is a cause), while the other word describes a response to that action or condition (which is the effect). For instance, the following word pairs describe cause and effect relationships (bacteria: infection, accident: injury, cold: fever, etc.). Remember to be careful of the direction of the relationship in such word pairs. Thus, if the original pair of words has the cause first and the effect later, the correct answer will also follow the same order. Consider the following example:

TREMBLE : FEAR

- (a) shiver : cold
- (b) stifle : sneeze
- (c) itch : scratch
- (d) irritate : nettle

While a tremble is a response to fear, a shiver is a response to cold. Option C is also a cause and effect but in the reverse order.

Type 7: Member and Class

In this type of problem on analogy, one of the words in the pair is an element of a class that the other word in the pair describes. For example, frog : amphibian means that frog is a kind of amphibian. An appropriate matching pair might be tuna : fish, since tuna is a kind of fish. (tragedy : drama and cow : mammal are other examples of the same.)

BALLET : DANCE

- (a) book : novel
- (b) theater : play
- (c) sonnet : poem
- (d) artist : sculptor

Ballet is one form of dance while sonnet is a kind of poem.

Type 8: Definition

In this type of problem, one of the words in the pair can be used to define the other word. For instance, someone who is frivolous is silly, someone who is careless is casual. Consider, the following example:

PHILANTHROPIST : ALTRUISM

- (a) nationalist : orthodoxy
- (b) ascetic : self-denial
- (c) writer : publication
- (d) general : soldier

A philanthropist practices altruism while an ascetic is one who practices self-denial. The other options do not fit into this structure and hence the answer is B.

Type 9: Function

In this type of analogy, the relationship between the two words is a functional one. For example, in word pair gloves : hands, the gloves serve to protect the hands. Similarly in the word pair feet : walk, two words are connected to each other through the relationship of function.

TRAINING : SKILL

- (a) neurological : brain
- (b) auspicious : event
- (c) speech : lesson
- (d) mnemonic : memory

Training can be used to improve skill just as a mnemonic is something that can be used to improve memory.

Type 10: Symbol and Representation

In this type of problem structure, one of the words in the pair is the representation of the concept or thing denoted by the other. Common symbols include punctuation marks. For example, comma : pause :: road : stop. Other examples are objects that now represent actions or events, such as a white flag indicating surrender or hawk indicating warlike or a dove representing peace.

LAUREL WREATH : VICTORY ::

- (a) honor : pride
- (b) olive branch : peace
- (c) parentheses : continuous
- (d) light : darkness

An olive branch is a symbol of peace while a laurel wreath is a symbol of victory.

Type 11: Defining Characteristic

- Stable : Horse :: Fire Station : Fire Engine
- The defining characteristic of a stable is a horse while that of a fire station is a fire engine.

Type 12: Manner

- Strut : Walk :: Yodel : Sing.
- Strut is a type or manner of walking just as yodel is a type of singing.

Type 13: Articles Made by a Worker

- Artist : Painting :: Carpenter : Table.
- Just as an artist creates a painting, a carpenter makes a table.

Type 14: The Worker and his Tools

- Artist : Paintbrush :: Programmer : Computer.
- An artist uses a paintbrush while a programmer uses a computer.

Type 15: The Worker and his Task

- Teacher : Teaches :: Driver : Drives.
- A teacher teaches while a driver drives.

16: The Worker and the Work Place

- Teller : Bank :: Sergeant : Post.
- A teller works in the bank while a sergeant works on his post.

17: The Tool and the Object

- Scissors : Paper :: Hammer : Nail.
- Scissors are used on paper just as a hammer is used on a nail.

18: The Tool and the Action

- Scissors : Cut :: Screwdriver : Screw.
- Scissors cut while a screwdriver screws.

19: Actions and their Significance

- Smile : Pleasure :: Frown : Displeasure.
- A smile conveys pleasure while a frown conveys displeasure.

Exercise

Instruction for Question 1 to 50: Choose the option that suits the relationship given in the question.

_____ : highway :: net : court

- (a) road
- (c) ticket

- (b) radar
- (d) median

(d)

churn : _____ :: press : wine

- (a) paddle
- (c) putter

- (b) cream
- (d) stomach

(b)

collar : shirt :: _____ : hat

- (a) button
- (c) pullover

- (b) visor
- (d) hood

dough : bread :: _____ : pancake

- (a) griddle
- (c) batter

- (b) cake
- (d) oven

_____ : skid :: obstacle : swerve

- (a) bike
- (c) wheel

- (b) ice
- (d) roadway

_____ : forgiveness :: bribe : influence

- (a) quarrel
- (c) apology

- (b) lie
- (d) perjury

_____ : tradition :: hedonist : pleasure

- (a) purist
(c) displeasure
8. knave : _____ :: coward : bravery
(a) retreat
(c) truth
9. _____ : ship :: telescope : star
(a) deck
(c) periscope
10. tarpaulin : rain :: _____ : stain
(a) stove
(c) puddle
11. sniff : inhale :: _____ : lop
(a) crush
(c) snip
12. outrage : peeve :: strive : _____
(a) attempt
(c) duel
13. thrifty : _____ :: hungry : gluttonous
(a) virtue
(c) avarice
14. privy : secret :: sympathetic : _____
(a) spy
(c) clandestine
15. pallid : color :: tactless : _____
(a) hue
(c) verve
16. din : _____ :: odor : garbage
(a) crowd
(c) dark
17. _____ : incising :: spatula : lifting
(a) pancake
(c) scalpel
18. ratchet : _____ :: grow : inches
(a) tools
(c) yards
19. admonish : _____ :: defeat : conquer
(a) administer
- (b) Eden
(d) agnostic
- (b) beauty
(d) stoicism
- (b) water
(d) astronomy
- (b) picnic
(d) apron
- (b) snit
(d) adhere
- (b) curse
(d) shun
- (b) vice
(d) self-control
- (b) grief
(d) joy
- (b) tasteless
(d) diplomatic
- (b) tree
(d) nose
- (b) bullhorn
(d) truck
- (b) shrink
(d) stages
- (b) celebrate

- (c) negotiate
20. mercenary : wages :: dilettante : _____
 (a) enjoyment
 (c) strife
21. Poverty: Prosperity
 (a) Love: Sorrow
 (c) Rain: Flood
22. Stage: Theatre
 (a) Bedroom: House
 (c) Patient: Hospital
23. Tree: Sapling
 (a) Rock: Mountain
 (c) Giant: Dwarf
24. Monk: Monastery
 (a) Noble: House
 (c) Nun: Convent
25. Laboratory: Germs
 (a) School: Students
 (c) Library: Books
26. Cool: Frigid
 (a) Livid: Lurid
 (c) Tepid: Torrid
27. Lamb: Frisk
 (a) Deer: Swoop
 (c) Bear: Leap
28. Cricket: Pitch
 (a) Ship: Dock
 (c) Wrestling: Track
29. Coffee: Beverages
 (a) Bread: Butter
 (c) Burger: Snacks
30. Graphite: Lubricant
 (a) Movement: Friction
 (c) Wool: Cloth
- (d) berate
- (b) rifle
 (d) market
- (b) Train: Cart
 (d) Intelligence: Stupidity
- (b) Car: Road
 (d) School: Education
- (b) Horse: Foal
 (d) Hut: Mansion
- (b) Lon: Hole
 (d) Peasant: Village
- (b) Playground: Games
 (d) Observatory: Planets
- (b) Poll: Placid
 (d) Lack: Abundant
- (b) Cat: Steal
 (d) Lion: Stride
- (b) Boat: Harbour
 (d) Boxing: Ring
- (b) Milk: Tea
 (d) Grapes: Wine
- (b) Iron: Steel
 (d) Diamond: Abrasive

@CUET 2024 BOOKS

31. Illiterate: Uneducated
(a) Country: State
(c) Palace: Hut
(b) City: Village
(d) Vision: Sight
32. Duralumin: Aircraft
(a) Brass: Alloy
(c) Iron: Steel
(b) Stone: Sculptor
(d) Bronze: Statue
33. Ribs: Lungs
(a) Ball: Sphere
(c) Shell: Net
(b) Hand: Fingers
(d) Coat: Tie
34. Expend: Replenish
(a) Exhort: Encourage
(c) Defect: Rejoin
(b) Formant: Rebellion
(d) Encroachment: Occupy
35. Money: Transaction
(a) Life: Death
(c) Ideas: Exchange
(b) Water: Drink
(d) Language: Conversation
36. Fare: Absurdity
(a) Disease: Medicine
(c) Tragedy: Comedy
(b) Charity: Generosity
(d) Energy: Electricity
37. Visitor: Welcome
(a) Beggar: Hungry
(c) Criminal: Prosecute
(b) Worship: God
(d) Warrior: Conquer
38. Garbage: Dustbin
(a) Tree: Honey
(c) Kitchen: House
(b) Medicine: Capsule
(d) Bangles: Hand
39. Overlook: Aberration
(a) Mitigate: Penitence
(c) Error: Omission
(b) Condone: Offence
(d) Conviction: Criminal
40. Mongoose: Snake
(a) Milk: Goat
(c) Whale: Crow
(b) Fish: Crane
(d) Water: Sky
41. Blister: Skin
(a) Sore: Toe
(c) Ball: Pitcher
(b) Sty: Eye
(d) Wound: Arm
42. Horse: Mare
(a) Duck: Geese
(c) Donkey: Pony
(b) Dog: Puppy
(d) Fox: Vixen
43. Water: Thirst
(a) Ripe: Harvest
(c) Needle: Stitch
(b) Book: Ignorance
(d) Rain: Throat

Sale: Purchase
(a) Give: Receive
(c) Cash: Credit

Read: Legible
(a) Hear: Audible
(c) See: illegible

Locks: Warble
(a) Crows: Cackle
(c) Owls: Hoot

Parsing: Grammar
(a) Running: Health
(c) Para trooping: Air force

Story: Novel
(a) Sea: Ocean
(c) Book: Dictionary

Balled: Song
(a) Envelope: Letter
(c) Cat: Leopard

Fish: Mermaid
(a) Cat: Lion
(c) Unicorn: Tapestry

(b) Shop: Market
(d) Profit: Loss

(b) Qualify: Eligible
(d) Require: Admissible

(b) Tiger: Yelp
(d) Camel: Bleat

(b) Praying: God
(d) Cleaning: House

(b) School: University
(d) Poetry: Drama

(b) Prose: Literature
(d) Ode: Poem

(b) Horse: Centaur
(d) Pegasus: Fly

Solutions

- (d) A median divides a highway, and a net divides a court, as in tennis.
(c) A churn is used to make butter, and a press is used to make wine.
(b) A collar is part of a shirt, and a visor is part of a hat.
(c) Dough becomes bread in the cooking process, and batter becomes a pancake.
(b) Ice can cause something to skid, and an obstacle can cause something to swerve.
(c) An apology is used to attain forgiveness, and a bribe is used to attain influence.
(a) A purist is fixated on tradition, and a hedonist is fixated on pleasure.
(c) A knave is one who does not exhibit the truth, and a coward does not exhibit bravery.
(c) A periscope is used to look for ships, and a telescope is used to look for stars.
(d) A tarpaulin is used to protect from rain, and an apron is used to protect from stains.
(c) To sniff is less intense than to inhale, and to snip is less intense than to lop.
(a) To outrage is more intense than to peeve, and to strive is more intense than to attempt.
(c) Thrifty describes avarice, and hungry describes gluttonous.
(b) Privy is sharing in a secret, and sympathetic is sharing in grief.
(d) Pallid means lacking in color, and tactless means lacking diplomacy.
(a) Din, or noise, is a word associated with a crowd, and odor is a word associated with garbage.
(c) A scalpel is used to make an incision, and a spatula is used for lifting.

18. (d) To ratchet means to increase by stages, and to grow is to increase by inches.
19. (d) To admonish is less intense than to berate, and to defeat is less intense than to conquer.
20. (a) A mercenary performs a task for wages, and a dilettante does something for enjoyment.
21. (d) The words in each pair are antonyms of each other
22. (a) First is a part of second
23. (b) Second is the young one of the first
24. (c) Second is dwelling place of first
25. (d) First is the place to study the second
26. (c) Frigid is the extreme of cooling to make things to freeze likewise, tepid is only lukewarm and torrid is to dry by heating
27. (b) Seconds denote the manner of walking of the first
28. (d) Cricket is playing on pitch likewise, boxing is done in ring
29. (c) Seconds denotes the class to which first belongs
30. (d) Graphite is used as a lubricant and diamond as an abrasive
31. (d) The word in each pair is synonyms
32. (d) First is an alloy used to make the second
33. (c) First encloses the second and protects it
34. (c) The words in each pairs are antonyms of each other
35. (d) We transact with money and converse in a language
36. (b) The words in each pairs are synonyms
37. (c) A visitor is given a welcome and a criminal is prosecuted
38. (b) Second contains the first
39. (b) First is the act of neglecting the second
40. (b) First is eaten by the second
41. (b) Blister is an infection of skin. Sty is the affection of eye
42. (d) Second is the female of the first
43. (d) Lack of water is thrust and lack of rain is drought
44. (a) Sale corresponds to giving and purchase corresponds to receiving
45. (a) Legible means able to read and audible means able to heard
46. (c) Second is the sound produced by the first
47. (c) First is an essential part of second
48. (a) Second is more voluminous form of the first
49. (d) First is a type of second
50. (b) A mermaid is a fish imaginary creature, similarly a centaur is a horse like imaginary creature



Foreign Words And Their Meaning

1. Addendum ----- An item added, for example at the end of a book or publication.
2. Ad hoc ----- For that specific purpose.
3. Ad lib (ad libitum) --- Freely; without restriction; without preparation.
5. Agenda ----- List of things to be done.
6. A la carte ----- Dishes that can be ordered separately, not the set menu.
7. Alfresco ----- Outdoors, in the open air.
8. Alibi ----- Proof that someone suspected of a crime was in another place at the time it happened.
9. Alter ego ----- Another self; another aspect of oneself.
10. Antenna ----- 1) A transducer which converts electrical power into electromagnetic waves and vice versa. 2) Feeler or horn of an insect.
11. A posteriori ----- Based on experience; derived from evidence
12. A priori ----- Based on an assumption rather than on observed facts
13. Au pair ----- Young foreign girl who helps in a home with the housework and the children
14. Ab initio ----- From the beginning
15. Ab origine ----- From the origin
16. Ad Infinitum ----- To infinity
17. Ad interim ----- Temporarily
18. Ad libitum ----- At pleasure
19. Ad nauseam ----- To the point of disgust
20. Ad valorem ----- According to the value
21. A fortiori ----- With more still stronger reason
22. Ante meridiem ----- Before noon
23. Alias ----- A second name bestowed upon himself by a person
24. Au fait ----- well versed
25. ballet ----- An artistic dance performed to music using precise steps and gestures.
26. ballerina ----- A woman who is a ballet dancer.
27. bete noire ----- A person or thing disliked or dreaded, or something that annoys you intensely.
28. bona fide ----- Done in good faith, without intention to deceive.
29. Bandolero ----- A dacoit
30. Bona enfant ----- A good fellow
31. Bon Voyage ----- An enjoyable journey

32. Cadre ----- Official status
33. Canard ----- A hoax or rumor
34. Carte blanche ----- Free hand
35. Charge d'affaires ----- one who acts as an ambassador
36. Compte rendu ----- A report or review
37. Confer ----- Compare
38. Corpus delicti ----- The substance of an offence
39. Corrigendum ----- Correction made in the book after printing
40. Coup de grace ----- A death blow
41. Coup de main ----- A bold attempt
42. Cuisine ----- The kind of cooking
43. Café ----- 'Café' means 'coffee' in French and refers to a coffee shop.
44. Carpe diem ----- Seize the day (enjoy yourself while you can).
45. Carte blanche ----- Have full powers; complete freedom to act.
46. Casino ----- A building where gambling games are played.
47. Chef d'oeuvre ----- A masterpiece, especially when referring to art.
48. Circa ----- Around, about or approximately (used before a year).
49. Confetti ----- Little pieces of colored paper thrown during a celebration such as a wedding.
50. Coup d'état ----- A sudden overthrow of a government by the army.
51. Creche ----- Child care center or nursery.
52. Croissant ----- A flaky crescent-shaped roll or pastry.
53. Cum laude ----- With honors (above-average achievement).
54. De trop ----- Too much
55. De novo ----- Again
56. De facto ----- From the fact (exists in actual fact, although not official).
57. Delicatessen ----- A shop where you can find ready-to-eat products such as cooked meats and salads etc.
58. Elite ----- Superior
59. Entrepreneur ----- A person who starts their own company.
60. Ergo ----- Therefore; for that reason.
61. Et cetera ----- And other similar things; and so forth.
62. Exempli gratia (e.g.) ----- For example.
63. Extravaganza ----- A lavish or spectacular show, event or performance.
64. Faux-pas ----- A social mistake or blunder.

65. **Femme fatale** ----- An attractive and seductive woman.
66. **Fiasco** ----- A complete failure.
67. **Genre** ----- Category, type or style e.g., music or literature.
68. **Glitch** ----- Small problem or fault that prevents something from being successful.
69. **Graffiti** ----- A writing or drawing on to a public surface such as a wall.
70. **Grotesque** ----- Odd, exaggerated or unnatural in appearance, shape or character.
71. **Guerilla** ----- An irregular, independent armed force.
72. **Id est (i.e.)** ----- That is; in other words.
73. **In situ** ----- On site (where something takes place).
74. **Ipsso facto** ----- By that very fact; as a direct consequence.
75. **Karaoke** ----- Sing along with the tune of a popular song while reading the lyrics from a screen.
76. **Karate** ----- A martial art that originated in Japan.
77. **Kindergarten** ----- Nursery school for children before they start elementary school.
78. **Macho** ----- Arrogantly virile or have an exaggerated sense of power or the right to dominate.
79. **Mea culpa** ----- It's my fault; through my fault.
80. **Modus operandi** ----- The usual way of doing things (for example: the modus operandi of burglars).
81. **Nouveau riche** ----- People who have recently become wealthy; newly rich.
82. **Origami** ----- The art of folding small pieces of paper in order to form them into interesting shapes.
83. **Paparazzi** ----- Freelance photographers who pursue celebrities.
84. **Partisan** ----- Strong supporter of a party, cause or faction.
85. **Parvenu** ----- Wealthy or important person from obscure origins or a low social position.
86. **Patio** ----- A paved or concrete leisure area adjoining a house.
87. **Pergola** ----- An arch or structure in a garden for climbing plants.
88. **Persona non grata** ----- An unacceptable person who is not wanted or welcome.
89. **Plaza** ----- A public open area in a town or city, also called a "square".
90. **Post mortem** ----- Examination of a dead body (to determine the cause of death).
91. **Pro bono** ----- Free of charge; without asking for payment.
92. **Pro forma** ----- Standard document (for example, a pro forma invoice).
93. **Pro rata** ----- In proportion to the amount or size of something.
94. **Propaganda** ----- Misleading or biased information used to promote a cause.
95. **Renaissance** -- Word meaning "rebirth" used to describe the historical period between 1300 and 1600
96. **Rendez-vous** ----- An arrangement to meet someone.
97. **Siesta** ----- A nap or a rest during the day, usually in the early afternoon.

98. Sine die ----- Indefinitely; without fixing a date for future action.
99. Sine qua non ----- Essential condition without which something is impossible.
100. Solo ----- Done or performed by one person alone.
101. Status quo ----- The present or current situation; the existing state of affairs.
102. Tiletto ----- A woman's shoe with a thin high heel.
103. Subpoena ----- Legal document ordering someone to appear in court.
104. Terracotta ----- A type of fired clay that is brownish-red in color
105. Tsunami ----- A gigantic sea wave that is usually caused by an earthquake.
106. Vice versa ----- Valid also in the opposite order, or the other way round.
107. Emeritus ----- One retired from active service
108. En bloc ----- Taken all together
109. En effet ----- Reality
110. En masse ----- Several persons
111. En train ----- Under progress
112. Esprit de corps ----- Spirit of Comradeship
113. Exempli gratia ----- For Example
114. Ex gratia ----- By virtue of his office
115. Ex parte ----- One sided judgement
116. Ex tempore ----- Without preparation
117. Facsimile ----- A perfect copy
118. Fait accompli ----- A work surely done
119. Faux pas ----- A false step
120. Festina lente ----- Make haste slowly
121. Graits ----- Free of charge
122. Honoris causa ----- Honorary
123. Ibidem ----- In the same place
124. Idem ----- The same
125. In aeternum ----- Forever
126. In initio ----- In the beginning
127. Inter alia ----- Among other things
128. In toto ----- Completely
129. Ipso facto ----- In fact
130. Ipso jure ----- By the law
131. Lacuna ----- shortcomings
132. Locus standi ----- A place for standing

133. Mandamus ----- A writ issued by a higher court to a subordinate court
134. Materia medica ----- Material used for medical
135. Matinee ----- An afternoon performance
136. Me judice ----- In my opinion
137. Memorabilia ----- Things to be remember
138. Not bene ----- Note below
139. Obiter dictum ----- An opinion given by a judge
140. Par excellence ----- Extra excellence
141. Par example ----- For example
142. Pari passu ----- With equal pace
143. Per annum ----- Annually
144. Per capita ----- Per person
145. Per mensem ----- Per month
146. Per diem ----- Per day
147. Persona grata ----- A welcome guest
148. Prima facie ----- At first sight
149. Pro rata ----- In proportion
150. Respondez ----- Reply, If you please
151. Res judicata ----- Already decided
152. Versus ----- Against
153. Sobriquet ----- A nick name
154. Status quo ----- As things were before
155. Stet ----- Let it stand
156. Tete-a-tete ----- A private or face to face conversation
157. Ultimo ----- Last month
158. Ultra vires ----- Not valid
159. Vade mecum ----- A constantly consulted aid
160. Via media ----- A middle course; solution
161. Viva Voce ----- Oral examination
162. Vis-à-vis ----- Opposite; face to face
163. Mens rea ----- Guilty mind
164. Mens legis ----- Purpose of the law
165. Salarium ----- Salary

Exercise

Direction: Choose the correct meaning of the following

1. VIVA VOCA
 - (a) Oral examination
 - (b) Written examination
 - (c) Vital examination
 - (d) Examination
2. ULTIMO
 - (a) Team
 - (b) Ultimatum

- (c) Upcoming month
3. PRIMA FACIE
 - (a) Prime location
 - (c) At first sight
 4. PER DIEM
 - (a) Per hour
 - (c) Per month
 5. ME JUDICE
 - (a) In his judiciary
 - (c) In my opinion
 6. TETE-A-TETE
 - (a) A private conversation
 - (c) Shortcomings
 7. PARI PASSU
 - (a) Peripheral
 - (c) With equal space
 8. IPSO JURE
 - (a) Pseudo
 - (c) By oneself
 9. FAUX PAS
 - (a) Passing the fox
 - (c) False step
 10. MATINEE
 - (a) Morning Performance
 - (c) Clever Performance
 11. EN MASSE
 - (a) Mass
 - (c) Bunch of grapes
 12. IN INITIO
 - (a) At the end
 - (c) In the beginning
 13. SINE DIE
 - (a) Definitely
 - (c) Precautions
 14. PRO BONO
 - (a) Profitable
 - (c) Discharge
 15. FIASCO
 - (a) Complete success
 - (c) Complete distraction
 16. SOBRIUET
 - (a) A nick name
 - (c) Sober things
 17. UTRA VIRES
 - (a) To finish
 - (c) Always
 18. MENS REA
 - (b) Last month
 - (b) Prime face
 - (d) Last impression
 - (b) Per day
 - (d) Per Second
 - (b) In my Judiciary
 - (d) In his opinion
 - (b) Group conversation
 - (d) Treasure
 - (b) No space
 - (d) Patience
 - (b) Pilgrim
 - (d) By the law
 - (b) False grip
 - (d) True law
 - (b) Afternoon Performance
 - (d) Muddy surrounding
 - (b) Volume
 - (d) Several persons
 - (b) In the middle of
 - (d) Past relations
 - (b) Indefinitely
 - (d) Cautions
 - (b) Proficiency
 - (d) Free of charge
 - (b) Complete failure
 - (d) Complete Chapter
 - (b) Real name
 - (d) quality paper
 - (b) By the law
 - (d) Not valid

- (a) Free mind
(c) Guilty mind
19. STET
(a) Trying harder
(c) Let it stand
20. PER CAPITA
(a) Per Month
(c) Per day
21. ELITE
(a) Barrier
(c) Inferior
22. ERGO
(a) Anywhere
(c) Somewhere
23. ET CETERA
(a) Immoral
(c) And other similar things
24. DE NOVO
(a) Again
(c) Replica
25. CARPE DIEM
(a) Different carpet
(c) Different
26. COUP DE GRACE
(a) A death bow
(c) Maximum
27. CANARD
(a) Cooper
(c) Space
28. BANDOLERO
(a) A hero
(c) A friend
29. BONA FIDE
(a) Done without concern
(c) Done in good faith
30. AD LIBITUM
(a) At pleasure
(c) At the center
31. AD INTERIM
(a) Addition
(c) Occasion
32. AB LIB
(a) Bandit
(c) Brick
33. DE TROP
(a) Many
(c) Too much
- (b) Sober mind
(d) Men's ego
- (b) Going straight
(d) Let it be
- (b) Per person
(d) Per Annum
- (b) Carrier
(d) Superior
- (b) Nowhere
(d) Therefore
- (b) Eternal
(d) Things in the center
- (b) Same
(d) Different
- (b) Boring
(d) Seize the day
- (b) Minimum
(d) Gracious
- (b) Cannibal
(d) Rumor
- (b) A dacoit
(d) A Heroine
- (b) Done by chance
(d) Done in bad faith
- (b) At ease
(d) In the front
- (b) Creation
(d) Temporally
- (b) Freely
(d) Friend
- (b) Few
(d) Little

@CUET_2024_BOOKS

34. AD HOC
(a) For Something
(c) For specific purpose
(b) For nothing
(d) For home
35. LACUNA
(a) Lower
(c) Lesser
(b) Upper
(d) Shortcomings
36. IN TOTO
(a) Completely
(c) One-fourth
(b) Half
(d) One-third
37. BEAU MONDE
(a) Fashion
(c) A fashionable society
(b) An attractive lady
(d) Other Half
38. A LA CARTE
(a) An unlimited range
(c) In the same manner
(b) On the menu
(d) In the memory of
39. A LA
(a) Surprise
(c) Song
(b) Just like someone
(d) Beckon
40. AU FAIT
(a) Failure
(c) Person well versed with the layout of the city
(b) Fatalist
(d) A beautiful lady
41. DOUBLE ENTENDRE
(a) Split Personality
(c) Ambiguous Word
(b) Twins
(d) Hypocrite
42. CARTE BLANCHE
(a) A Secret Plot
(c) A person having the full authority to take decisions
(b) Horse Carriage
(d) Alibi
43. KIBBUTZ
(a) Punishment
(c) A joint family
(b) Farm in Israel where farmers share profits or losses
(d) A person who is loyal and industrious
44. NON-COMPOS MENTIS
(a) Short Tempered
(c) A type of plant
(b) Not in the right frame of mind
(d) The process of mentoring
45. EXEMPLI GRATIA
(a) Golden Handshake
(c) A specific situation
(b) And so, on
(d) Gratuity
46. DEJA VU
(a) Goodbye
(c) Already seen
(b) Feeling of sadness
(d) Secret meeting place
47. HABEAS CORPUS
(a) Unaccounted money
(b) Blackmail
(c) Law by which a court order is mandatory to put someone behind bars
(d) Embezzlement of funds set aside for charitable purpose
48. HAUTE COUTRE
(a) A leading fashion designing company
(c) Affidavit
(b) Arrogant
(d) A secret love affair
49. JE NA SAIS UOI
(a) A person detained for questioning
(c) Oath
(b) A feeling of happiness which cannot be described
(d) A prominent personality

50. CORRIGENDUM
 (a) Correspondence
 (c) Corrections in a newspaper or magazine

- (b) Apologize
 (d) A fresh affidavit filed in the court of law

Solutions

1.	a	2.	d	3.	c	4.	b	5.	c	6.	a	7.	c	8.	d	9.	c	10.	b
11.	d	12.	c	13.	b	14.	d	15.	b	16.	a	17.	d	18.	c	19.	c	20.	b
21.	d	22.	d	23.	c	24.	a	25.	d	26.	a	27.	d	28.	b	29.	c	30.	a
31.	d	32.	b	33.	c	34.	c	35.	d	36.	a	37.	c	38.	b	39.	b	40.	c
41.	c	42.	c	43.	b	44.	b	45.	b	46.	c	47.	c	48.	a	49.	b	50.	c



HERFAVIMAYANK

...~~~~~...